# DCS thyristor power converter

for DC drive systems 20 to 820 A 9 to 429 kW

Manual DCS 400



### List of contents

|   | Manual  |   |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | DCS 400 - the compact-size DC drive   | II K 1-1  |
| 2 | System overview of DCS 4002.1Environmental conditions2.2DCS 400 power converter modules2.3DCS 400 overload withstand capability2.4Control and Display Units of the DCS 400  | II K 2-2<br>II K 2-3<br>II K 2-4  |
| 3 | Technical Data3.1Module Dimensions  | II K 3-1<br>II K 3-3<br>II K 3-4<br>II K 3-5<br>II K 3-6<br>II K 3-8<br>II K 3-9                              |
|   | Overview of software         4.1 General inormation abaut application Macros         4.2 Application Macros         4.3 Digital and analogue Inputs/Outputs         4.4 Drive Logic         4.5 Regulator functions         4.6 Software Structure         4.7 Parameter list         5.1 Safety instructions         5.2 Installation in accordance with EMC | II K 4-2<br>II K 4-4<br>II K 4-22<br>II K 4-24<br>II K 4-26<br>II K 4-32<br>II K 4-34<br>II K 5-1<br>II K 5-2 |
| 6 | <ul> <li>5.3 Connection Examples</li> <li>Operating Instructions</li> <li>6.1 Panel</li> <li>6.2 Guided Commissioning</li> <li>6.3 Troubleshooting</li> </ul>   | II K 5-10<br>II K 6-1<br>II K 6-2<br>II K 6-7   |
| 7 | 7.1       Panel-port         7.2       RS232-port         7.3       Fieldbus interface  | II K <b>7-3</b><br>II K <b>7-4</b>  |
| A | A Accessories<br>Line chokes<br>Fuses<br>EMC filter<br>B Declaration of conformity<br>C Quick Installation & Commissioning guide<br>D Examples for basic parameter programming  | II К А-1<br>II К А-4<br>II К А-6<br>II К В-1<br>II К С-1  |

## 1 DCS 400 - the compact-size DC drive

DCS 400 is a new generation of DC drives, which is rated from 10 to 430 KW and for use on all line supply voltages from 230 to 500 V.

*Totalease of use* was the brief given to the drive`s designers. The result is a DC drive that meets the needs of machine builders. It is:

- ☆ as easy to handle as an analogue drive but with all the advantages of a digital drive
- ☆ easy to design into machine equipment, being compact and having just the right number of features

 $\Rightarrow$  easy to install and set up

The DCS 400 is an **innovative design**, using the latest semiconductor technology together with an advanced software which helps to reduce maintenance, increase product reliability and enables extremely rapid commissioning.

The DCS 400's small size brings substantial space savings to machine builders, allowing them to

integrate more accessories within the same space. The compact design has been partly achieved by a fully integrated field exciter, which includes the field fuse and choke.

Based on **new IGBT technology** used for the field exciter, there is no need for a field voltage adaptation transformer to match the line supply voltage with that of the motor.

The **commissioning wizard** -available on the control panel and the PC tool - makes start up of the drive extremely easy, by simply guiding the user through the start up procedure.

In addition, the DCS 400 contains **application macros**. By selecting a macro from a menu, the user can pre-select the software structure and the I/O connection, thus saving time and eliminating any errors.

The DCS 400 carries the CE Mark and is designed and produced according to the quality standard ISO 9001.





### **Unit functions**

### **Drive functions**

- Speed ramp function generator (S-ramp, 2 accel / decel ramps)
- Speed feedback via tacho, encoder, EMF
- Speed controlling
- Torque / current reference processing
- External torque limitation
- Current controlling
- Automatic field weakening
- Automatic optimization for armature-circuit current, field current, speed controller, EMF regulator
- Speed monitor
- On/Off control logic
- Remote/local operation
- Emergency stop
- Automatic phase sequence detection
- Motor overload detection
- Internal motor potentiometer function for the speed reference
- Jog function
- Configuration macros

### **Monitoring functions**

### Self-test Fault memory Motor monitoring

### • Speed feedback error

- Overtemperature (PTC evaluation)
- Overload (I<sup>2</sup> t)
- Overspeed
- Stalled motor
- Armature-circuit overcurrent
- Armature-circuit ripples
- Armature-circuit overvoltage
- Minimum field current
- Field overcurrent

### **Power converter protection**

- Overtemperature
- Watchdog function
- Mains voltage interruption

### Activation and operator-control

analogue and digital **inputs** and **outputs** 

### fieldbusses

**MMC** (man-machine communication) via:

### **Drive Window Light**

(start-up and maintenance program) PC programs can be run under all commonly used Windows<sup>®</sup> environments (3.1x, 95, NT):

- Parameter programming
- Fault detection
- Feedback display and analysis
- Fault logger

### DCS-400-PAN

Removable control and display panel with plain text display for:

- Guided commissioning
- Parameter programming
- Fault detection
- Reference and feedback display
- Local operation

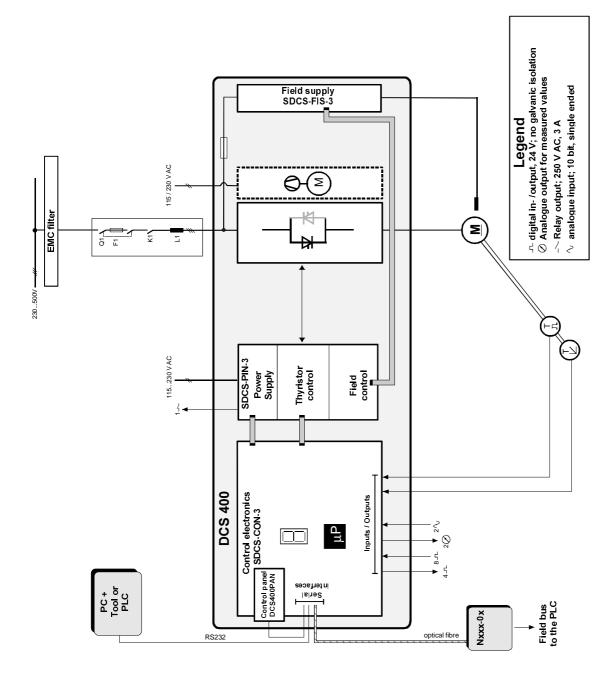


Fig. 2/1: System overview of DCS 400

### Mains supply - power part

| Voltage, 3-  | phase:           | 230 to 500 V in acc. with IE |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|------------------|------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Voltage de   | viation:         | ±10% permanent               |  |  |  |  |  |
| Rated frequ  | uency:           | 50 Hz or 60 Hz               |  |  |  |  |  |
| Static frequ | ency deviation:  | 50 Hz ±2 %; 60 Hz ±2 %       |  |  |  |  |  |
| Dynamic:     | frequency range: | 50 Hz: ±5 Hz; 60 Hz: ± 5 Hz  |  |  |  |  |  |
|              | df/dt:           | 17 % / s                     |  |  |  |  |  |
|              |                  |                              |  |  |  |  |  |

### Mains supply - Electronics supply

| Voltage, 1-phase:  | 115 to 230 V in acc. with IEC 38 |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| Voltage deviation: | -15% / +10%                      |
| Frequency range:   | 45 Hz to 65 Hz                   |
|                    |                                  |

IP 00

**Degree of protection** Power converter module:

### Paint finish

Power converter module, cover: RAL 9002 light-grey RAL 7012 dark-grey housing:

### Current reduction to (%) for armature circuit and field supply

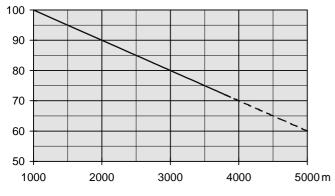


Fig. 2.1/1: Effect of the site elevation above sea level on the power converter's load capacity

### **Compliance with standards**

The power converter modules and cubicles are designed for industrial applications. Within the EU, the components satisfy the requirements European guidelines, shown in the table below.

| English Disording                                      | Manufacturer's Assurance                                     | Harmonized Standards   |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| European Union Directive                               | Manufacturer's Assurance                                     | Converter module   |  |  |  |
| Machinery Directive<br>89/392/EEC<br>93/68/EEC         | Declaration of<br>Incorporation                              | EN 60204-1<br>[IEC 204-1]  |  |  |  |
| <i>Low Voltage Directive</i><br>73/23/EEC<br>93/68/EEC | Declaration of Conformity                                    | EN 60146-1-1<br>[IEC 146-1-1]<br>EN 50178 [IEC]<br>see additional<br>IEC 664   |  |  |  |
|  |  | EN 61800-3<br>[IEC 1800-3]   |  |  |  |
|  | Declaration of Conformity.<br>Provided that all installation | where limits are under consideration<br>EN 50081-2 / EN 50082-2 has been supplied  |  |  |  |
| EMC Directive<br>89/336/EEC                            | instructions concerning<br>cable selection, cabling and      | <ul> <li>① in accordance with 3ADW 000 032</li> <li>'Installation in accordance with EMC'</li> </ul>   |  |  |  |
| 93/68/EEC  | EMC filters or dedicated transformer are followed.           | The Technical Construction File to which this<br>Declaration relates has been assessed by<br>Report and Certificate from ABB EMC<br>Certification AB being the Competent Body<br>according to the EMC Directive. |  |  |  |

A3

A4

|           | Environmental  | limit value                              | s            |   |   |
|-----------|--|--|--------------|---|---|
| n IEC 38  |  |  |              | ted current I <sub>bc</sub> : +5 to +40°C<br>le:+40°C to 55°C; s. Fig. 2.1/   | 2 |
| %<br>5 Hz | Alteration in the<br>Storage temper<br>Transport temp<br>Relative humidi<br>Pollution degree | ambient ter<br>ature:<br>erature:<br>ty: |              | <ul> <li>&lt; 0,5°C / minute</li> <li>-40 to +55°C</li> <li>-40 to +70°C</li> <li>5 to 95%, no condensation</li> <li>Grade 2</li> </ul> | ~ |
| n IEC 38  | Site elevation:<br><1000 m above<br>>1000 m above  |  |              | , without current reduction urrent reduct., s. Fig. 2.1/1   |   |
|           | Vibration conve  | rter module:                             | 0,5 g;       | 5 Hz to 55 Hz   |   |
|           | Noises:<br>(1 m distance)  | Size                                     | as mo        | odule   |   |
|           | . ,  | A1<br>A2                                 | 55 d<br>55 d |   |   |

### Current reduction to (%) for armature circuit and field supply

60 dBA

68 dBA

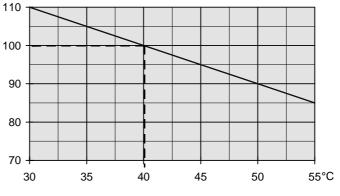


Fig. 2.1/2: Effect of the ambient temperature on the converter module load capacity.

### **Standards in North America**

In North America, the system components satisfy the requirements as listed in the table below.



#### Please note:

applies for power converter modules only.

### Sizes









| Siz  | e A1             | Size A2                         |                         | Size A3                                   | Si             | ze A4    |
|------|------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|---|----------------|----------|
| Size | Current<br>range | Dimensions<br>H x W x D<br>[mm] | Weight<br>appr.<br>[kg] | Min. Clearances<br>top/butom/side<br>[mm] | Fan connection | Fuses    |
| A1   | 2025 A           | 310x270x200                     | 11                      | 150x100x5                                 | -              | external |
| A1   | 45140 A          | 310x270x200                     | 11                      | 150x100x5                                 | 115/230 V/1 ph | external |
| A2   | 180260 A         | 310x270x270                     | 16                      | 250x150x5                                 | 115/230 V/1 ph | external |
| A3   | 315550 A         | 400x270x310                     | 25                      | 250x150x10                                | 115/230 V/1 ph | external |
| A4   | 610820 A         | 580x270x345                     | 38                      | 250x150x10                                | ① 230 V/1 ph   | external |

Table 2.2/1: Sizes of DCS 400

### Unit table

DCS 401 2-quadrant converter

### DCS 402 4-quadrant converter

| Converter type |                     |                     |                    | Line voltage<br>400 V 500 V |        | Size | Converter type |                     |                     |                    | Line vo<br>400 V | ltage<br>500 V |
|----------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|--------|------|----------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
|                | I <sub>DC</sub> [A] | I <sub>AC</sub> [A] | I <sub>F</sub> [A] | P [kW]                      | P [kW] |      |                | I <sub>DC</sub> [A] | I <sub>AC</sub> [A] | I <sub>F</sub> [A] | P [kW]           | P [kW]         |
| DCS401.0020    | 20                  | 16                  | 6                  | 9                           | 12     | A1   | DCS402.0025    | 25                  | 20                  | 6                  | 10               | 13             |
| DCS401.0045    | 45                  | 36                  | 6                  | 21                          | 26     | A1   | DCS402.0050    | 50                  | 41                  |                    | 21               | 26             |
| DCS401.0065    | 65                  | 52                  | 6                  | 31                          | 39     | A1   | DCS402.0075    | 75                  | 61                  | 6                  | 31               | 39             |
| DCS401.0090    | 90                  | 74                  | 6                  | 41                          | 52     | A1   | DCS402.0100    | 100                 | 82                  | 6                  | 41               | 52             |
| DCS401.0125    | 125                 | 102                 | 6                  | 58                          | 73     | A1   | DCS402.0140    | 140                 | 114                 | 6                  | 58               | 73             |
| DCS401.0180    | 180                 | 147                 | 12                 | 84                          | 104    | A2   | DCS402.0200    | 200                 | 163                 | 12                 | 83               | 104            |
| DCS401.0230    | 230                 | 188                 | 12                 | 107                         | 133    | A2   | DCS402.0260    | 260                 | 212                 | 12                 | 108              | 135            |
| DCS401.0315    | 315                 | 257                 | 14                 | 146                         | 183    | A3   | DCS402.0350    | 350                 | 286                 | 14                 | 145              | 182            |
| DCS401.0405    | 405                 | 330                 | 14                 | 188                         | 235    | A3   | DCS402.0450    | 450                 | 367                 | 14                 | 187              | 234            |
| DCS401.0500    | 500                 | 408                 | 14                 | 232                         | 290    | A3   | DCS402.0550    | 550                 | 448                 | 14                 | 232              | 290            |
| DCS401.0610    | 610                 | 498                 | 16                 | 284                         | 354    | A4   | DCS402.0680    | 680                 | 555                 | 16                 | 282              | 354            |
| DCS401.0740    | 740                 | 604                 | 16                 | 344                         | 429    | A4   | DCS402.0820    | 820                 | 669                 | 16                 | 340              | 426            |

Table 2.2/2: DCS 401 unit table

### **DC voltage characteristic**

The DC voltage characteristics are calculated according to:

- U<sub>VN</sub> = rated supply voltage, 3-phase
  Voltage tolerance ±10 %

Table 2.2/3: DCS 402 unit table

| System con-<br>nection voltage | DC voltage<br>(max. Motor voltage) |         | Ideal DC voltage<br>without load |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------|----------------------------------|
| U                              |                                    | $U_{d}$ | $U_{di0}$                        |
|                                | 2Q 1 4Q                            |         |                                  |
| 230                            | 270                                | 240     | 310                              |
| 380                            | 460                                | 400     | 510                              |
| 400                            | 470                                | 420     | 540                              |
| 415                            | 490                                | 430     | 560                              |
| 440                            | 520                                | 460     | 590                              |
| 460                            | 540                                | 480     | 620                              |
| 480                            | 570                                | 500     | 640                              |
| 500                            | 600                                | 520     | 670                              |

Table 2.2/4: Recommendet DC voltage with specified input voltage

II K 2-3

① Fan with 115 V/1 ph available as option

① in case of a 2-Q converter, which is used in regenarative mode, please use 4-Q voltage values

To match a drive system's components as efficiently as possible to the driven machine's load profile, the power converters can be dimensioned by means of the load cycle. Load cycles for driven machines have been defined in the IEC 146 or IEEE specifications, for example.

The characteristics are based on an ambient temperature of max.  $40^{\circ}$ C and an elevation of max. 1000 m.

### Types of load

| Operating cycle | Load<br>for converter   | Typical applications      | Load cycle                    |
|-----------------|---|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| DC I            | I <sub>DC I</sub> continuous (I <sub>dN</sub> )                           | pumps, fans               | -#                            |
| DC II           | I <sub>DC Ⅱ</sub> for 15 min and<br>1,5 * I <sub>DC Ⅱ</sub> for 60 s      | extruders, conveyor belts | 15 min<br>15 min<br>150% 100% |
| DC III          | I <sub>DC III</sub> for 15 min and<br>1,5 * I <sub>DC III</sub> for 120 s | extruders, conveyor belts | 15 min<br>150% 100%           |
| DC IV           | $I_{DC IV}$ for 15 min and 2 * $I_{DC IV}$ for 10 s                       |                           | 15 min<br>200% 100%           |

Table 2.3/1: Definition of the load cycles

### Load cycles of driven machines

|                  |                 |       | _      |       |                |            | _   | Converter type       |
|------------------|-----------------|-------|--------|-------|----------------|------------|-----|----------------------|
| DCI              | DC              | : 11  | D      |       | DC             | N IV       | ]   |                      |
| I <sub>DC1</sub> | I <sub>DC</sub> | 511   | I.     | CIII  | I <sub>D</sub> | CIV        | -   | Converter type       |
|                  |                 |       |        |       |                |            |     |                      |
| contin-          | 100 %           | 150 % | 100 %  | 150 % | 100 %          | 200 %      |     |                      |
| uous             | 15 min          | 60 s  | 15 min | 120 s | 15 min         | 10 s       |     |                      |
| [A]              |                 | A]    |        | [A]   | [A             | <b>\</b> ] |     |                      |
|                  | it applications |       |        |       |                |            |     | 2-quadrant converter |
| 20               | 18              | 27    | 18     | 27    | 18             | 36         |     | DCS 401.0020         |
| 45               | 40              | 60    | 37     | 56    | 38             | 76         |     | DCS 401.0045         |
| 65               | 54              | 81    | 52     | 78    | 55             | 110        |     | DCS 401.0065         |
| 90               | 78              | 117   | 72     | 108   | 66             | 132        |     | DCS 401.0090         |
| 125              | 104             | 156   | 100    | 150   | 94             | 188        |     | DCS 401.0125         |
| 180              | 148             | 222   | 144    | 216   | 124            | 248        |     | DCS 401.0180         |
| 230              | 200             | 300   | 188    | 282   | 178            | 356        |     | DCS 401.0230         |
| 315              | 264             | 396   | 250    | 375   | 230            | 460        |     | DCS 401.0315         |
| 405              | 320             | 480   | 310    | 465   | 308            | 616        |     | DCS 401.0405         |
| 500              | 404             | 606   | 388    | 582   | 350            | 700        |     | DCS 401.0500         |
| 610              | 490             | 735   | 482    | 723   | 454            | 908        |     | DCS 401.0610         |
| 740              | 596             | 894   | 578    | 867   | 538            | 1076       |     | DCS 401.0740         |
| 4-quadrar        | nt applications |       |        |       |                |            |     | 4-quadrant converter |
| 25               | 23              | 35    | 22     | 33    | 21             | 42         |     | DCS 402.0025         |
| 50               | 45              | 68    | 43     | 65    | 38             | 76         |     | DCS 402.0050         |
| 75               | 66              | 99    | 64     | 96    | 57             | 114        |     | DCS 402.0075         |
| 100              | 78              | 117   | 75     | 113   | 67             | 134        |     | DCS 402.0100         |
| 140              | 110             | 165   | 105    | 158   | 99             | 198        |     | DCS 402.0140         |
| 200              | 152             | 228   | 148    | 222   | 126            | 252        |     | DCS 402.0200         |
| 260              | 214             | 321   | 206    | 309   | 184            | 368        |     | DCS 402.0260         |
| 350              | 286             | 429   | 276    | 414   | 265            | 530        |     | DCS 402.0350         |
| 450              | 360             | 540   | 346    | 519   | 315            | 630        |     | DCS 402.0450         |
| 550              | 436             | 654   | 418    | 627   | 380            | 760        |     | DCS 402.0550         |
| 680              | 544             | 816   | 538    | 807   | 492            | 984        |     | DCS 402.0680         |
| 820              | 664             | 996   | 648    | 972   | 598            | 1196       |     | DCS 402.0820         |
|                  |                 |       |        |       |                |            | - ' |                      |

### Recommended Converter type

Table 2.3/2: Selection of converter modules according to the corresponding load cycles.

For operation, commissioning, diagnosis and for controlling the drive, there are different possibilities available. The coupling to an overriding system (PLC) takes place over a serial interface with a fibre-optic link to a field bus adapter.

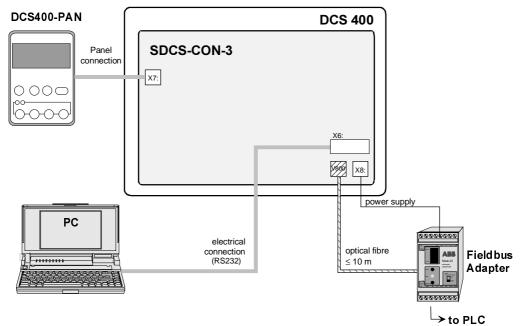


Fig. 2.4/1: Possibilities of operation



### Panel DCS 400 PAN Features

- Guided commissioning (Panel Wizard)
- Drive control
- Parameter programming
- Display of reference and actual values
- Status information
- Fault reset
- Multilingual
- removable during operation

# 8

### 7-Segment display

- Features
- RAM/ROM memory test error
- Program is not running
- Normal situation
- During download sequence
- Alarm
- Fault

### Fieldbus Adapter Components:

- plastic optical fibre
- field bus adaptor

### available Fieldbus adapters:

- PROFIBUS
- AC 31
- MODBUS
- MODBUS+
- CAN-BUS

You will find more detailed information on data exchange in the related documentation for field bus adapters.

### Operation by PC

### **Components** :

• RS232 standard cable, 9-pin sub-D connector, male-female, non-crossing

To avoid unintentional operating states, or to shut

the unit down in case of any imminent danger

according to the standards in the safety instructions it is not sufficient to merely shut down the

drive via signals 'RUN', drive 'OFF' or 'Emergency Stop' respectively 'control panel' or 'PC tool'.

### **Functionality:**

• Software package "Drive Window Light"

### System requirements/recommendation:

- PC with 386 processor or higher
- hard disk with 1MB free memory
- VGA monitor

**CAUTION!** 

- Windows 3.1, 3.11, 95, 98, NT
- 3 1/2" floppy disk drive

### **Drive Window Light**

Drive Window Light is a PC tool for on-line startup, diagnosis, maintenance and troubleshooting.





offers an overview the system.



Drive control

to be used for control of a selected drive.



### Parameter programming

to be used to process signals and parameters of the destination drive.



# Trending

monitors the feedback values of the destination drive.



Fault logger

enables you to view and erase the error memory.

### Start-up wizard

The start-up wizard makes it easier to parameterize and optimize a drive. It guides the user through the various sequences involved in a start-up.

| N DCC400   |   |
|--|---|
| N. DCC400  |   |
| 🖬 DCS400 - general data  |   |
| 🛋 DCS400 - general data  |   |
| Motor-Data<br>Armature Voltage (1.02) 400 V<br>Armature Current (1.01) 25 A<br>Field Voltage (1.04) 310 V  | Stop - Mode (2.02)<br>Stop by Ramp<br>Stop by Torque<br>Stop by Coasting  |
| Field Current (1.03)       1       A         Base Speed (1.05)       2000       rpm         Fieldweakening       Image: Compare the system of the system o | Emergency Stop - Mode (2.03)<br>Stop by Ramp<br>Stop by Torque<br>Stop by Coasting  |
| Converter-Data<br>Panel Language (7.01) englisch 💌<br>Applicat. Macro (2.01) Makro 1   | Rampgenerator       Accel. Ramp (5.09)     20     sec       Decel. Ramp (5.10)     20     sec       Eme.Stop Ramp (5.11)     20     sec |
| Speed Feedback (5.02)<br>EMF<br>Tachol<br>Encoder 2048 Encoder Incr. (5.03)  | Help next >> cancel   |

Fig. 2.4/2: Example for a Start-up wizard display

# 3 Technical Data

### 3.1 Module dimensions

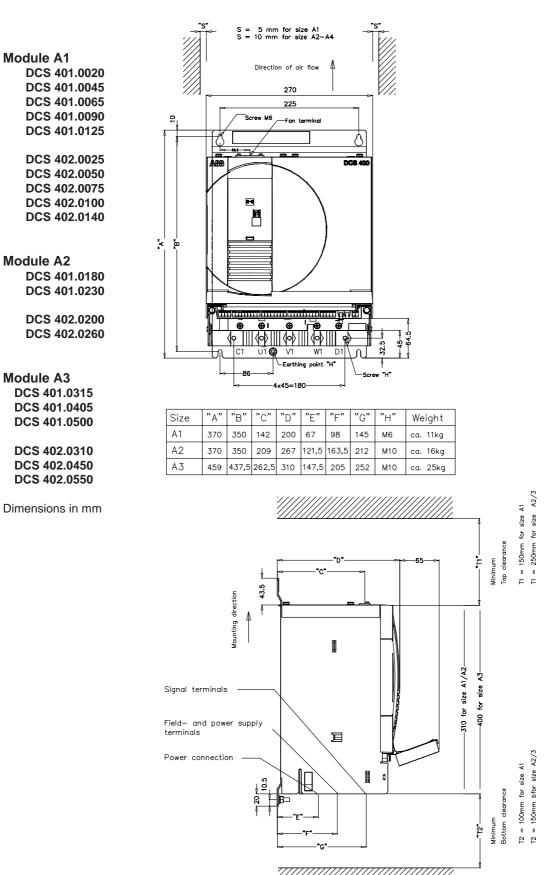


Fig. 3.1/1: Dimension drawing A1, A2, A3-Module

II K 3-1

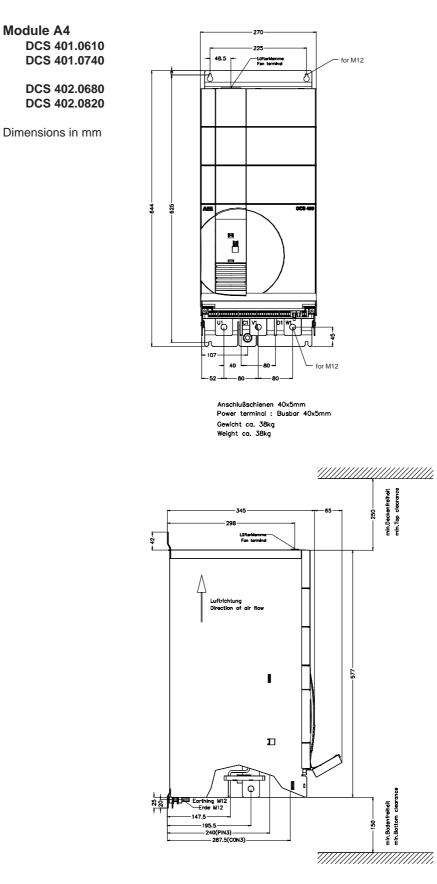


Fig. 3.1/2: Dimension drawing A4-Module

II K 3-2

| Unit type      |      | C1      | , D1                 |          | U1, V1, W1 |         |             | PE 🕕    |          |             |         |       |               |
|----------------|------|---------|----------------------|----------|------------|---------|-------------|---------|----------|-------------|---------|-------|---------------|
|                |      | HO7V    | NSGA<br>FÖU          | N2XY     |            | HO7V    | NSGA<br>FÖU | N2XY    | HO7V     | NSGA<br>FÖU | N2XY    | ,     | S             |
|                | IDC  |         | $(\bigcirc \bigcirc$ | $(\Box)$ | lv         |         |             |         | $(\Box)$ |             |         |       | $\mathcal{S}$ |
|                | [A-] | [mm²]   | [mm²]                | [mm²]    | [A~]       | [mm²]   | [mm²]       | [mm²]   | [mm²]    | [mm²]       | [mm²]   | 1 x M | [Nm]          |
| DCS 401.0020   | 20   | 1 x 2.5 | 1 x 1.5              | 1 x 1.5  | 16         | 1 x 2.5 | 1 x 1.5     | 1 x 1.5 | 1 x 2.5  | 1 x 1.5     | 1 x 1.5 | M6    | 6             |
| DCS 401.0045   | 45   | 1 x 10  | 1x 6                 | 1x 6     | 36         | 1x 6    | 1x 6        | 1x 4    | 1x 6     | 1x 6        | 1x 4    | M6    | 6             |
| DCS 401.0065   | 65   | 1 x 16  | 1 x 10               | 1 x 10   | 52         | 1 x 16  | 1 x 10      | 1x 6    | 1 x 16   | 1 x 10      | 1 x 6   | M6    | 6             |
| DCS 401.0090   | 90   | 1 x 25  | 1 x 16               | 1 x 16   | 74         | 1 x 25  | 1 x 16      | 1 x 16  | 1 x 16   | 1 x 16      | 1 x 16  | M6    | 6             |
| DCS 401.0125   | 125  | 1 x 35  | 1 x 25               | 1 x 25   | 102        | 1 x 35  | 1 x 25      | 1 x 25  | 1 x 16   | 1 x 16      | 1 x 16  | M6    | 6             |
| DCS 401.0180   | 180  | 1 x 70  | 1 x 50               | 1 x 50   | 147        | 1 x 50  | 1 x 50      | 1 x 35  | 1 x 25   | 1 x 25      | 1 x 16  | M10   | 25            |
| DCS 401.0230   | 230  | 1 x 95  | 1 x 70               | 1 x 70   | 188        | 1 x 70  | 1 x 70      | 1 x 50  | 1 x 35   | 1 x 35      | 1 x 25  | M10   | 25            |
| DCS 401.0315   | 315  | 2 x 50  | 1 x 95               | 1 x 120  | 257        | 2 x 50  | 1 x 95      | 1 x 95  | 1 x 50   | 1 x 50      | 1 x 50  | M10   | 25            |
| DCS 401.0405   | 405  | 2 x 70  | 2 x 50               | 1 x 150  | 330        | 2 x 70  | 2 x 50      | 1 x 120 | 1 x 70   | 1 x 50      | 1 x 70  | M10   | 25            |
| DCS 401.0500   | 500  | 2 x 120 | 2 x 70               | 2 x 70   | 408        | 2 x 95  | 2 x 70      | 2 x 70  | 1 x 95   | 1 x 70      | 1 x 70  | M10   | 25            |
| DCS 401.0610 * | 610  | 2 x 150 | 2 x 95               | 2 x 95   | 498        | 2 x 150 | 2 x 95      | 2 x 70  | 1 x 150  | 1 x 95      | 1 x 70  | M12   | 50            |
| DCS 401.0740 * | 740  | 2 x 240 | 2 x 150              | 2 x 150  | 604        | 2 x 185 | 2 x 120     | 2 x 95  | 1 x 185  | 1 x 120     | 1 x 95  | M12   | 50            |
| DCS 402.0025   | 25   | 1 x 2.5 | 1 x 2.5              | 1 x 2.5  | 20         | 1 x 2.5 | 1 x 2.5     | 1 x 1.5 | 1 x 2.5  | 1 x 2.5     | 1 x 1.5 | M6    | 6             |
| DCS 402.0050   | 50   | 1 x 10  | 1x 6                 | 1x 6     | 41         | 1 x 10  | 1x 6        | 1x 4    | 1 x 10   | 1x 6        | 1x 4    | M6    | 6             |
| DCS 402.0075   | 75   | 1 x 16  | 1 x 10               | 1 x 16   | 61         | 1 x 16  | 1 x 10      | 1 x 10  | 1 x 16   | 1 x 10      | 1 x 10  | M6    | 6             |
| DCS 402.0100   | 100  | 1 x 25  | 1 x 16               | 1 x 25   | 82         | 1 x 25  | 1 x 16      | 1 x 16  | 1 x 16   | 1 x 16      | 1 x 16  | M6    | 6             |
| DCS 402.0140   | 140  | 1x 50   | 1 x 35               | 1 x 35   | 114        | 1 x 35  | 1x 25       | 1 x 25  | 1 x 16   | 1 x 16      | 1 x 16  | M6    | 6             |
| DCS 402.0200   | 200  | 1 x 70  | 1 x 50               | 1 x 70   | 163        | 1 x 70  | 1x 50       | 1 x 50  | 1 x 35   | 1 x 25      | 1 x 25  | M10   | 25            |
| DCS 402.0260   | 260  | 1 x 120 | 1 x 70               | 1 x 95   | 212        | 1 x 95  | 1 x 70      | 1 x 70  | 1x 50    | 1 x 35      | 1 x 35  | M10   | 25            |
| DCS 402.0350   | 350  | 2 x 70  | 1 x 120              | 1 x 120  | 286        | 2 x 50  | 1 x 120     | 1 x 95  | 1x 50    | 1 x 70      | 1x 50   | M10   | 25            |
| DCS 402.0450   | 450  | 2 x 95  | 2 x 70               | 2 x 70   | 367        | 2 x 70  | 2 x 70      | 2 x 50  | 1 x 70   | 1 x 70      | 1 x 50  | M10   | 25            |
| DCS 402.0550   | 550  | 2 x 120 | 2 x 95               | 2 x 95   | 465        | 2 x 120 | 2 x 70      | 2 x 70  | 1 x 120  | 1 x 70      | 1 x 70  | M10   | 25            |
| DCS 402.0680 * | 680  | 2 x 185 | 2 x 120              | 2 x 120  | 555        | 2 x 150 | 2 x 120     | 2 x 95  | 1 x 150  | 1 x 120     | 1 x 95  | M12   | 50            |
| DCS 402.0820 * | 820  | 2 x 240 | 2 x 150              | 2 x 150  | 669        | 2 x 240 | 2 x 150     | 2 x 120 | 1 x 240  | 1 x 150     | 1 x 120 | M12   | 50            |

Recommended cross-sectional area to DIN VDE 0276-1000 and DIN VDE 0100-540 (PE), trefoil arrangement, up to 40°C ambient temperature and a 90°C operating temperature of the conductor.

\* Busbar connection 5 x 40 mm is recommended

Table 3.2/1: Cross-sectional areas - tightening torques DCS 400

• You will find instructions on how to calculate the PE conductor's cross-sectional area in VDE 0100 or in equivalent national standards. We would remind you that power converters may have a current-limiting effect. This can lead to other values that recommended.

Definition of the recommended cables above: **H07V**: DIN-VDE 0281-1; Polyvinyl chloride insulated cables **NSGAFÖU**: DIN-VDE 0250-602; Special rubber-insulated single-core cables **N2XY**: DIN-VDE 0276-604; Power cable with special fire performance

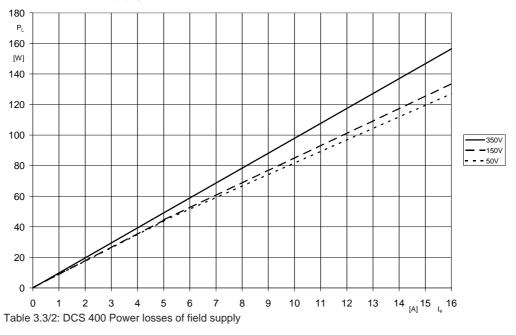
| DCS 400 | armature | circuit |
|---------|----------|---------|
|---------|----------|---------|

| Converter type |            |                     | Power losses P <sub>L</sub> [W] |                   |                   |                     |
|----------------|------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
|                |            | 1 [A]               | Load                            |                   |                   | 1009/               |
|                |            | I <sub>DC</sub> [A] | 25%                             | 50%               | 75%               | 100%                |
| DCS401.0020    |            | 20                  | 10                              | 22                | 35                | 49                  |
| DCS401.0045    |            | 45                  | 25                              | 57                | 95                | 145                 |
| DCS401.0065    |            | 65                  | 38                              | 80                | 128               | 181                 |
| DCS401.0090    |            | 90                  | 48                              | 103               | 166               | 236                 |
| DCS401.0125    |            | 125                 | 65                              | 138               | 220               | 311                 |
| DCS401.0180    | JURAILL    | 180                 | 96                              | 210               | 341               | 490                 |
| DCS401.0230    |            | 230                 | 116                             | 254               | 413               | 594                 |
| DCS401.0315    | z-yuauranı | 315                 | 163                             | 339               | 526               | 726                 |
| DCS401.0405    |            | 405                 | 218                             | 444               | 697               | 969                 |
| DCS401.0500    |            | 500                 | 236                             | 513               | 830               | 1188                |
| DCS401.0610    |            | 610                 | 312                             | 653               | 1025              | 1427                |
| DCS401.0740    |            | 740                 | 380                             | 799               | 1259              | 1758                |
| DCS402.0025    |            | 25                  | 13                              | 28                | 46                | 65                  |
| DCS402.0050    |            | 50                  | 28                              | 65                | 109               | 162                 |
| DCS402.0075    |            | 75                  | 44                              | 95                | 152               | 217                 |
| DCS402.0100    |            | 100                 | 53                              | 116               | 188               | 270                 |
| DCS402.0140    |            | 140                 | 73                              | 157               | 252               | 357                 |
| DCS402.0200 ,  | dill       | 200                 | 108                             | 238               | 389               | 562                 |
| DCS402.0260    |            | 260                 | 133                             | 293               | 481               | 696                 |
|                | 4-Cuaurant | 350<br>450<br>550   | 182<br>237<br>262               | 265<br>499<br>573 | 591<br>785<br>933 | 818<br>1096<br>1342 |
| DCS402.0680    |            | 680                 | 349                             | 736               | 1160              | 1622                |
| DCS402.0820    |            | 820                 | 423                             | 895               | 1416              | 1986                |

Table 3.3/1: DCS 400 Power losses of armature circuit

Remarks on the table

• The values stated are are maximum values obtained under the most unfavourable conditions.



### DCS 400 field supply

### Fan assignment for DCS 400

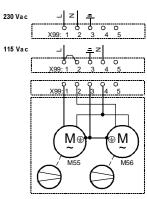
| Converter type                | Size | Fan type          | Configuration |
|-------------------------------|------|-------------------|---------------|
| DCS 40x.0020DCS 40x.0025      | A1   | no Fan            | -             |
| DCS 40x.0045DCS 40x.0140      | A1   | 2x CN2B2          | 1             |
| DCS 40x.0180DCS 40x.0260      | A2   | 2x CN2B2          | 1             |
| DCS 40x.0315DCS 40x.0350      | A3   | 2x CN2B2          | 1             |
| DCS 40x.0405DCS 40x.0570      | A3   | 4x CN2B2          | 2             |
| DCS 40x.0610DCS 40x.0820      | A4   | 1x W2E200 (230 V) | 3             |
| DCS 40x.0610. 2DCS 40x.082. 2 | A4   | 1x W2E200 (115 V) | 3             |

Table 3.4/1: Fan assignment for DCS 400

### Fan data for DCS 400 (data per fan)

| Fan type                                       | CN2B2             |              | W2E200            |         | W2E200            |        |  |
|--|-------------------|--------------|-------------------|---------|-------------------|--------|--|
| Rated voltage [V]                              | 115; 1~           |              | 230; 1~           |         | 115; 1~           |        |  |
| Tolerance [%]                                  | ±                 | ±10          |                   | +6/-10  |                   | +6/-10 |  |
| Frequency [Hz]                                 | 50                | 60           | 50                | 60      | 50                | 60     |  |
| Power consuption [W]                           | 16                | 13           | 64                | 80      | 64                | 80     |  |
| Current consumption [A]                        | 0.2               | 0.17         | 0.29              | 0.35    | 0.6               | 0.7    |  |
| Stall current [A]                              | < 0.3             | < 0.3 < 0.26 |                   | < 0.8   | <1.5              | <1.8   |  |
| Air volume, freely blowing [m <sup>3</sup> /h] | 156 180           |              | 925               | 1030    | 925               | 1030   |  |
| Working point [m3/h] at A                      | -                 |              | -                 |         | -                 |        |  |
| Max. ambient temperature [° C]                 | < 60              |              | < 75              |         | < 75              |        |  |
| Useful lifetime of fan                         | appr. 40000 h/60° |              | appr. 45000 h/60° |         | appr. 45000 h/60° |        |  |
| Protection                                     | Stall             |              |                   | Overtem | perature          |        |  |

### Fan connection for DCS 400



**Configuration 1** 

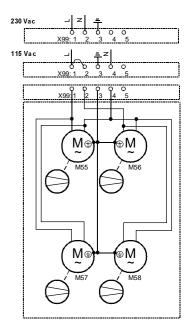
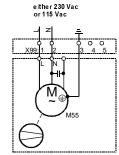


Table 3.4/2: Fan data for DCS 400

### Monitoring the DCS 400 power section

The power sections are monitored by an electrically isolated PTC thermistor detector. First an alarm will be outputted, and - if the temperature continues to rise - an error message. This will switch off the unit in a controlled manner.





**Configuration 3** 

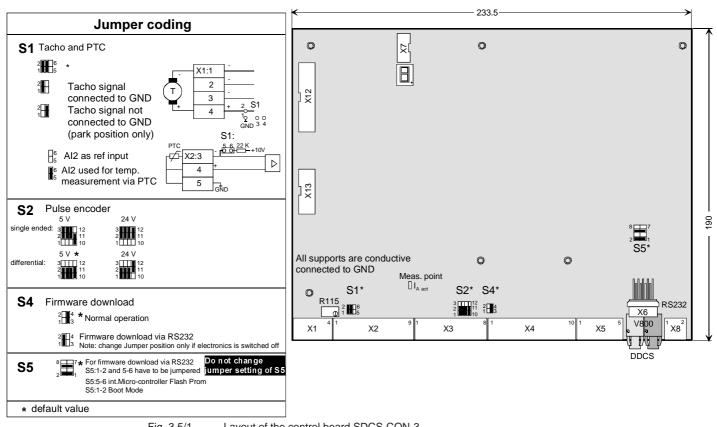


Fig. 3.5/1 Layout of the control board SDCS-CON-3

#### Control functions (Watchdog)

The control board has an internal watchdog. The watchdog trip has the following effects:

- Thyristor firing control is reset and disabled. - Digital outputs are forced to '0 V'.

### Supply voltage monitoring

| Supply voltage              | +5 V    | Mains   |
|-----------------------------|---------|---------|
| Undervoltage tripping level | +4.50 V | ≤97 VAC |

If +5 V drops under the tripping level, it causes a master reset by hardware. All I/O registers are forced to 0 and the firing pulses are suppressed.

If mains monitor trips, firing pulses are forced to inverter stability limit.

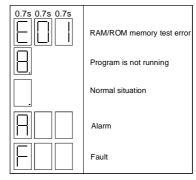
### Serial interfaces

The control board SDCS-CON-3 has three serial communication channels:

- X7: is a serial communication channel which is used for
  - DCS 400 PAN
  - Adapter (3AFE 10035368)
- X6: is a standard RS232 serial communication channel. It is a 9-pin D-Sub female connector
- V800 is an integrated channel and can be used for Fieldbus Adapter by using optical fibre

### Seven segment display

A seven segment display is located on the control board and it shows the state of drive.



Seven segment display of the SDCS-CON-3 Fig. 3.5/2

### Digital and analogue I/O connection of the SDCS-CON-3

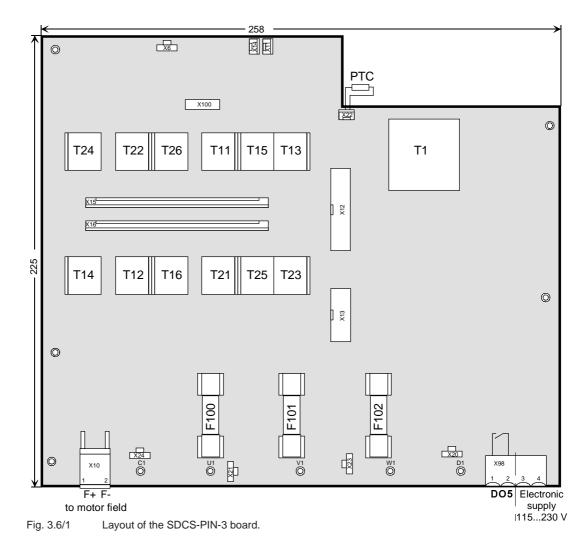
| <b>SDCS-CON-3</b><br>X1:1 - 90-270 V<br>- 30-90 V   |  | Software                                      | Reso-<br>lution<br>[bit] | v       | it/output<br>alues<br>rdware | Scaling<br>by      | Load                        | Common<br>mode<br>range        | Remarks                                 |
|---|--|---|--------------------------|---------|------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|---|
|   | 115<br>100k 100k<br>10k 100k<br>10k 100k<br>100k 100k<br>100k 100k<br>100k 100k<br>100k 100k<br>100k 100k  | AITAC   | 9 + sign                 | ±       | 0270 V<br>3090 V<br>±830 V   | R 115/<br>Software |                             | ±20 V                          | 1 2                                     |
| X2:1  | <b>↑</b> →   | Al1   | 9 + sign                 | -10     | 0+10 V                       | Software           |                             | ±20 V                          | 1 2                                     |
| 3 - <sup>1</sup> 8 8- <u>-</u> +10V<br>4 +  | <b>∧</b> →   | AI2   | 9 + sign                 | -10     | 0+10 V                       | Software           |                             | ±40 V                          | 1 2                                     |
| 5<br>6<br>7<br>8<br>9   | 0V<br>+10V<br>-10V<br>100µ475<br>100n1<br>•  | - AO1<br>- AO2                                | 7 + sign<br>7 + sign     | -10     | 0+10 V<br>0+10 V             | Software           |                             |                                | for external use<br>e.g. reference pot. |
| $\begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$   | ChR +<br>ChB +<br>ChB<br>ChB<br>ChZ +  | >   | Encoder                  | suppl   | <b>y</b>                     |                    | uts not isol<br>x. frequenc | Remarks<br>ated<br>;y ≤300 kH2 |   |
| 7         101111           8         +5V-0           X4:1         10k0 +22n   | GND<br>+24V Power-Source   | DI1   | 5V/ 24V                  |         | ≤ 200 m                      | A* Se              |                             | h jumper S                     |   |
| $\begin{array}{c} 2 \\ \hline 3 \\ \hline 4 \\ \hline 5 \\ \hline 6 \\ \hline 7 \\ \hline 8 \\ \hline \end{array} $ | $ \begin{array}{c}                                     $   | DI2<br>DI3<br>DI4<br>DI5<br>DI6<br>DI7<br>DI8 | 0+<br>+15+3              | 5 V     | Softwa                       |                    |                             | ≙ "0" stat<br>≙ "1" stat       | us                                      |
| 9<br>10<br>X5: 1  | < +24 V/ ≤50 m/  | +24V<br>DO1                                   | Output va                | alue    | Signal<br>by                 | definitio          | ı                           | Remarks                        | 5                                       |
|   | 47 <u>0</u> <u>†</u> <sup>↓</sup> | DO2<br>DO3<br>DO4                             | 50 *                     | mA      | Softwa                       | are                |                             | Current I<br>160 mA            | imit for all 4 outputs =                |
| erminal connectors X1:<br>hanged  | X5: are removable. They  | cannot be                                     |                          | +20 ı   | nA by ext                    |                    | $\Omega$ resistor           |                                |   |
|   |  |   | * short cir              | cuit pr | oof                          |                    |                             |                                |   |

#### Note

Unless otherwise stated, all signals are referenced to a 0 V potential. On all PCBs, this potential is firmly connected to the unit's casing by means of plating-through at the fixing points. The power interface board SDCS-PIN-3 is used for all converter modules model A1...A4.

Functions:

- firing pulse circuits
- measurement of the armature current
- snubber circuit
- AC and DC voltage measurement
- heat sink temperature measurement
- power supply for complete converter electronics
- fuses for overvoltage protection and field supply. Fuse data F100...F102:
  - Bussmann KTK-R-10A (600V)



### AC Supply voltage (X98:3-4)

| Supply voltage    | 115230 V AC       |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| Tolerence         | -15%/+10%         |
| Frequency         | 45 Hz 65 Hz       |
| Power consumption | 120 VA            |
| Power loss        | ≤60 W             |
| Inrush current    | 20 A/10 A (20 ms) |
| Mains buffering   | min 30 ms         |

### Output X98:1-2 (DO5)

Potential isolated by relay (N.O. contact) MOV- element (275 V) Contact rating: AC: ≤250 V~/ ≤3 A~ DC: ≤24 V-/ ≤3 Aor ≤115/230 V-/ ≤0.3 A-) The DCS 400 converter has an build-in three-phase field exciter with the following features:

- smoothed field voltage
  - better commutation of the motor
  - increased brush life
- · less heat generation in the motor
- less effort of cabling

#### Remark:

The DC link capacitor of the IGBT based field exciter serves as an overvoltage protection for the armature converter.

Overloading of the DC link capacitor is prevented by the connected motor field winding.

The energy of glitches caused by the commutation of the armature converter is no longer waste energy but is used by the field exciter.

Only with a connected field winding the overvoltage protection is working.

Therefore DCS400 can not be used with disconnected field.

Fig. 3.7/1 Layout of the SDCS-FIS-3 field exciter board

### Electrical data of SDCS-FIS-3

| AC input voltage:                    | 230 V500 V ±10%; three-phase                               |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| DC output voltage                    | 50350 V programmable                                       |
| AC input current:                    | ≤ output current   |
| AC isolation voltage:                | 600 V  |
| Frequency:                           | same as DCS converter module                               |
| DC output current:                   | 0.1 A6 A for armature converter modules from 20 A to 140 A |
|                                      | 0.3 A12 A for armature converter mod. from 180 A to 260 A  |
|                                      | 0.3 A14 A for armature converter mod. from 315 A to 550 A  |
|                                      | 0.3 A16 A for armature converter mod. for $\geq$ 610 A     |
| Power loss at I <sub>F rated</sub> : | ≤40 W  |
| Terminal X10:1,2                     | on SDCS-PIN-3  |
| Cross sectional area                 | 4 mm <sup>2</sup>  |
|                                      |  |

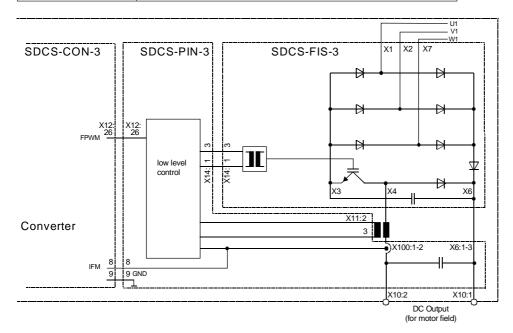
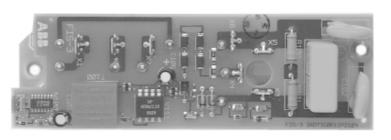
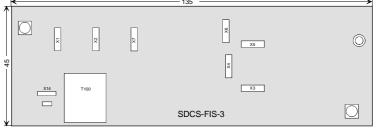
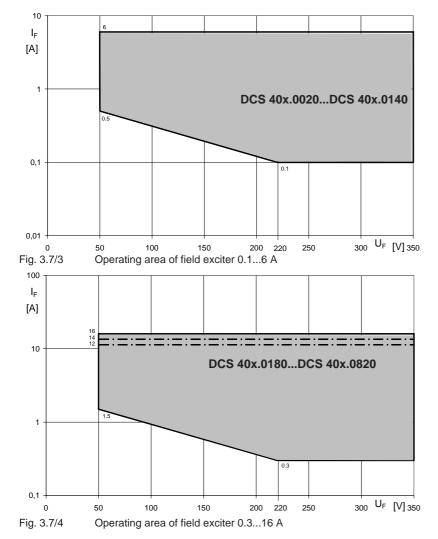


Fig. 3.7/2 Diagram of the field exciter unit





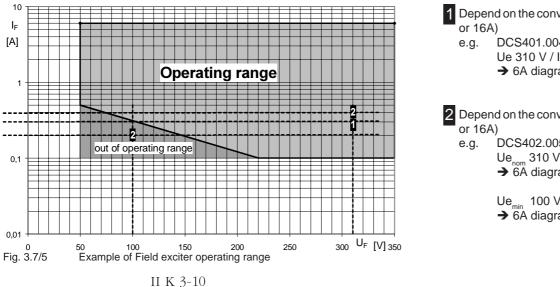


| System con-    | Field   | recommended                                 |
|----------------|---------|---|
| nection        | voltage | rated field                                 |
|                | range   | voltage                                     |
| $U_{\rm Line}$ |         | $U_{ m field}$                              |
| [V~]           | [V-]    | [V-]  |
| 230            | 50237   | 190   |
| 380            | 50350   | 310   |
| 400            | 50350   | 310   |
| 415            | 50350   | 310   |
| 440            | 50350   | 310   |
| 460            | 50350   | 310   |
| 480            | 50350   | 310   |
| 500            | 50350   | 310   |
| Table 3.7/1:   |         | det rated field volt-<br>to specified input |

Important note:

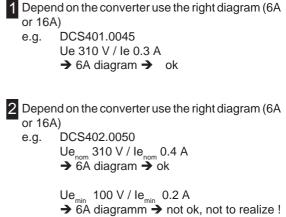
Nominal field voltage and field current of the motor has to be within the field controller operating range. For application with constant field it is easy to check:

Transfer values of field current and field voltage to the diagram and check that the point of intersection is within the operating range.



For field weakening application do that check with nominal values and minimal values. Both points of intersection has to be within the operating range.

#### Example:



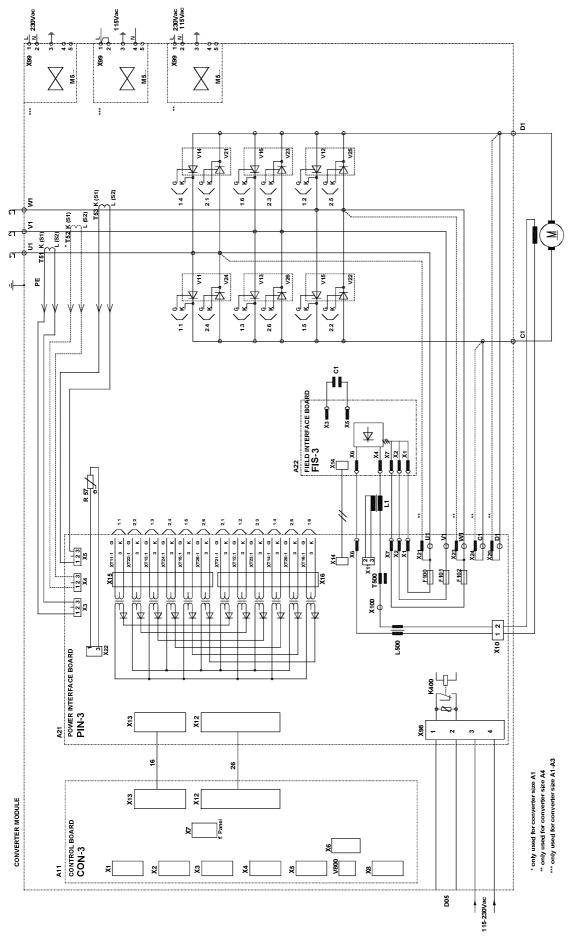


Fig. 3.8/1 Circuit diagram 4-Q converter

II K 3-11

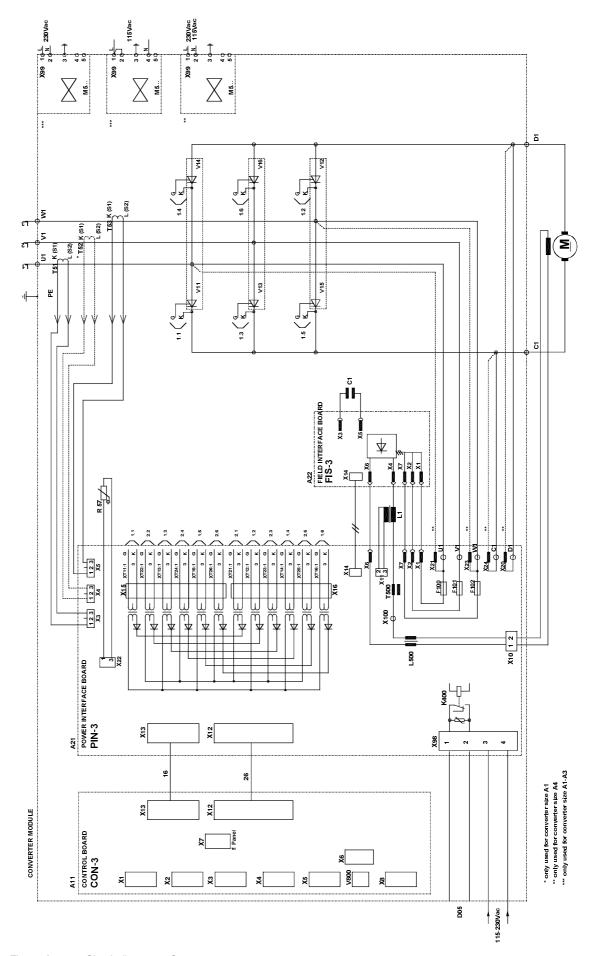


Fig. 3.8/2 Circuit diagram 2-Q converter

II K 3-12

# 4 Overview of software

(The software delivered may contain minor changes to the product described here.)

### Parameter

### **Function menu**

The parameters of the converter are subdivided into functional groups. These groups are listed in the table below.

| Parameter group      | Functions  |
|----------------------|--|
| 1 - Motor Settings   | Motor settings, actual line<br>values, auto reclosing  |
| 2 - Operating Mode   | Macro selection, behaviour<br>during switching on/off, con-<br>trol/status information, con-<br>trol location  |
| 3 - Armature         | Actual value signals, high<br>current dosage, controller<br>settings, stall protection, ref-<br>erence sources   |
| 4 - Field            | Actual value signals, con-<br>troller settings, overcurrent/<br>undercurrent tripping, flux<br>adaptation, field heating   |
| 5 - Speed Controller | Reference sources, actual<br>value acquisition, controller<br>settings, ramp generator,<br>constant speeds, alternative<br>settings, speed monitoring,<br>actual value filtering |
| 6 - Input/Output     | Scaling and allocation of the<br>analog and digital inputs and<br>outputs, display selection for<br>the control panel, field bus<br>allocation, actual value sig-<br>nals        |
| 7 - Maintenance      | Language selection, service<br>procedures, diagnostics,<br>fault and alarm information,<br>square-wave generator   |
| 8 - Field Bus        | Serial communication via the field bus, RS232 or panel adapter   |
| 9 - Macro Adaptation | Re-configure digital inputs<br>DI1DI4 of macros 1, 5, 6,<br>7, and 8.  |

Special functions of the control panel are listed in the table below.

| Menu function       | Significance   |
|---------------------|--|
| Set Typecode        | Typecode adaptation for replacement of SDCS-CON-3            |
| Read Faultlogger    | Read / Clear the last 16<br>Faults or Alarms                 |
| Factory Settings    | Reset all parameters to fac-<br>tory values (default values) |
| Copy to Panel       | Parameter uploading from drive to control panel              |
| Copy to Drive       | Parameter downloading<br>from control panel to drive         |
| Long/Short Par List | Some parameter visible / in-<br>visible                      |
| Panel Lock          | Lock the control panel for maloperation                      |
| LCD Contrast        | Contrast of cotrol panel display                             |
| Commissioning       | Guided commissioning via control panel                       |

Parameter saving

Any changes of the parameters are stored automatically in the FlashProm of the converter. The storage is executed in a time interval of approx. 10 seconds.

# 4.1 General information about application Macros

Macros are pre-programmed parameter sets. During start-up, the drive can be configured easily without changing individual parameters.

The functions of all inputs and outputs and of allocations in the control structure are influenced by the selection of a macro. Any allocation which can be set manually with a "selector" (parameter) is preset by the selection of a macro. The means, whether the drive is speed-controlled or torque-controlled, whether supplementary references are processed, which actual values are available at the

analog outputs, which reference value sources are used, etc. is already defined in the macro.

A macro is selected in the **Macro Select (2.01)** parameter. After selection a function is assigned to each of the digital inputs **DI1...DI8**. The functions are described in the chapter **Application Macros**.

The following "selectors" (parameters) are predefined when you are selecting the macro provided that these parameters have their default settings or are set to Macro Depend:

| Selector              | Remark   |
|-----------------------|--|
| Cmd Location (2.02)   | Control location   |
| Cur Contr Mode (3.14) | Current controller operat-<br>ing mode                             |
| Torque Ref Sel (3.15) | Torque reference source  |
| Speed Ref Sel (5.01)  | Speed reference source   |
| Alt Par Sel (5.21)    | Switching event for alter-<br>native speed control pa-<br>rameters |
| Aux Sp Ref Sel (5.26) | Auxiliary reference source   |
| AO1 Assign (6.05)     | Actual value output at an-<br>alog output AO1                      |
| AO2 Assign (6.08)     | Actual value output at an-<br>alog output AO2                      |
| DO1 Assign (6.11)     | Signal output at digital output DO1                                |
| DO2 Assign (6.12)     | Signal output at digital output DO2                                |
| DO3 Assign (6.13)     | Signal output at digital out-<br>put DO3                           |
| DO4 Assign (6.14)     | Signal output at digital out-<br>put DO4                           |
| DO5 Assign (6.15)     | Signal output at digital out-<br>put DO5                           |
| MSW bit 11 Ass (6.22) | Signal transmission in bit<br>11 of the status word                |
| MSW bit 12 Ass (6.23) | Signal transmission in bit 12 of the status word                   |
| MSW bit 13 Ass (6.24) | Signal transmission in bit 13 of the status word                   |
| MSW bit 14 Ass (6.25) | Signal transmission in bit 14 of the status word                   |
| Jog 1 (9.02)          | Jogging 1 function via<br>Fixed Speed 1 (5.13)                     |
| Jog 2 (9.03)          | Jogging 2 function via<br>Fixed Speed 2 (5.14)                     |
| COAST (9.04)          | Coast stop function  |
| User Fault (9.05)     | external User Fault event  |
| User Fault Inv (9.06) | external User Fault (in-<br>vers) event                            |

| 0.1                    | <b>_</b>  |
|------------------------|---|
| Selector               | Remark  |
| User Alarm (9.07)      | external User Alarm event   |
| User Alarm Inv (9.08)  | external User Alarm (in-<br>verse) event  |
| Dir of Rotation (9.09) | Direction of Rotation only for speed controlled drive                               |
| Mot Pot Incr (9.10)    | Motor Potentiometer Incre-<br>ment to increase speed ref.                           |
| Mot Pot Decr (9.11)    | Motor Potentiometer Dec-<br>rement to decrease speed ref.                           |
| MotPotMinSpeed (9.12)  | Motor Potentiometer Mini-<br>mum Speed ref.   |
| Ext Field Rev (9.13)   | external Field Reversal via<br>external field reversing<br>switch                   |
| AlternativParam (9.14) | switch over between<br>Standard Parameter Set<br>and Alternative Parame-<br>ter Set |
| Ext Speed Lim (9.15)   | external Speed Limitation via Fixed Speed 1 (5.13)                                  |
| Add AuxSpRef (9.16)    | additional aux. speed ref.  |
| Curr Lim 2 Inv (9.17)  | second current limitation via Arm Cur Lim 2 (3.24)                                  |
| Speed/Torque (9.18)    | switch over between speed<br>controlled and torque con-<br>trolled drive            |

Then the allocations will be dependent on the selected macro, see chapter *Application Macros*.

The user can *change* the allocations manually any time. Then they are no longer "*Macro Depend*". Hence the macro technique also allows the flexible, user-friendly adaptation to special requirements.

In addition to analog and digital outputs some of the digital inputs are reconfigurable. The digital inputs DI1...DI4 in macros 1+5+6+7+8 can be set individually via parameter group 9 - MacroAdaptation. Macros 2+3+4 are fixed, not re-configurable.

Example of MacroAdaptation:

- macro 6 MotorPot should be selected digital input DI1 should be re-defined from "direction of rotation" to "alternativ parameter set" for using ramp 1 / 2
- Set parameter "Dir of Rotation" (9.09) from Macro depend to Disable
- Set parameter "AlternativParam" (9.14) from Macro depend to DI1
- Set standard parameter set (5.07...5.10) and alternative parameter set (5.22...5.25) to values as required

|                       |                | •                  |                 |                 | -               | •               | -              | •                  |
|-----------------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------------|
| Macro -               |                | 2<br>Mar (Carat Cr | 3               | 4               | 5               | 6<br>Matar Dat  | 7              | 8<br>Ta any 6 Chal |
|                       | Standard       | Man/Const Sp       | Hand/Auto       | Hand/MotPot     | Jogging         | Motor Pot       | ext Field Rev  | Torque Ctrl        |
| Cmd Location (2.02)   | Terminals      | Terminals          | Terminals       | Terminals       | Terminals       | Terminals       | Terminals      | Terminals          |
| Cur Contr Mode (3.14) | Speed Contr    | Speed Contr        | Speed Contr     | Speed Contr     | Speed Contr     | Speed Contr     | Speed Contr    | Torque Contr       |
| Torque Ref Sel (3.15) | AI2            | AI2                | Const Zero      | AI2             | Const Zero      | Al2             | Al2            | Al1                |
| Speed Ref Sel (5.01)  | Al1            | Al1                | Al1             | Al1             | Al1             | Const Zero      | Al1            | Const Zero         |
| Alt Par Sel (5.21)    | Sp < Lev1      | Digital Input 4    | Sp < Lev1       | Sp < Lev1       | Sp < Lev1       | Sp < Lev1       | Sp < Lev1      | Sp < Lev1          |
| Aux Sp Ref Sel (5.26) | Const Zero     | Const Zero         | Const Zero      | Const Zero      | AI2             | Const Zero      | Const Zero     | Const Zero         |
| AO1 Assign (6.05)     | Speed Act      | Speed Act          | Speed Act       | Speed Act       | Speed Act       | Speed Act       | Speed Act      | Speed Act          |
| AO2 Assign (6.08)     | Arm Volt Act   | Arm Cur Act        | Arm Cur Act     | Arm Cur Act     | Torque Act      | Arm Volt Act    | Arm Volt Act   | Torque Act         |
| DO1 Assign (6.11)     | Rdy for Run    | Rdy for On         | Rdy for On      | Rdy for On      | Rdy for Run     | Rdy for Run     | Rdy for Run    | Rdy for Run        |
| DO2 Assign (6.12)     | Running        | Running            | Running         | Running         | Zero Speed      | Speed Level 1   | Running        | Running            |
| DO3 Assign (6.13)     | Zero Speed     | Fault              | Fault           | Fault           | At Setpoint     | Speed Level 2   | Field Rev Act  | Zero Speed         |
| DO4 Assign (6.14)     | Flt or Alarm   | Zero Speed         | Zero Speed      | Zero Speed      | Flt or Alarm    | Flt or Alarm    | Flt or Alarm   | Flt or Alarm       |
| DO5 Assign (6.15)     | Main Cont On   | Main Cont On       | Main Cont On    | Main Cont On    | Main Cont On    | Main Cont On    | Main Cont On   | Main Cont On       |
| MSW Bit11 Ass (6.22)  | none           | none               | none            | none            | none            | none            | none           | none               |
| MSW Bit12 Ass (6.23)  | none           | none               | none            | none            | none            | none            | none           | none               |
| MSW Bit13 Ass (6.24)  | none           | none               | none            | none            | none            | none            | none           | none               |
| MSW Bit14 Ass (6.25)  | none           | none               | none            | none            | none            | none            | none           | none               |
| Assignment of DI1     | Jog 1          | Start              | Start/Stop Hand | Start/Stop      | Direc of Rotat. | Direc of Rotat. | Ext Field Rev  | Coast              |
| DI2                   | Jog 2          | Stop               | Hand/Auto       | Jog 1           | Jog 1           | Incr. Speed     | Jog 1          | not used           |
| DI3                   | External Fault | Direc of Rotat.    | Direc of Rotat. | Direc of Rotat. | Jog 2           | Decr. Speed     | External Fault | External Fault     |
| DI4                   | External Alarm | Ramp 1 / 2         | AI1/Fixed Sp 1  | AI1/MotPot      | not used        | Min Speed       | External Alrm  | External Alrm      |
| DI5                   | Emerg. Stop    | Emerg. Stop        | Emerg. Stop     | Emerg. Stop     | Emerg. Stop     | Emerg. Stop     | Emerg. Stop    | Emerg. Stop        |
| DI6                   | Reset          | Reset              | Reset           | Reset           | Reset           | Reset           | Reset          | Reset              |
| DI7                   | On/Off         | Fixed Speed 1      | Direc of Rotat. | Incr. Speed     | On/Off          | On/Off          | On/Off         | On/Off             |
| DI8                   | Run            | Fixed Speed 2      | Start/Stop Auto | Decr. Speed     | Run             | Run             | Run            | Run                |

Overview of factory settings of macro-dependent parameters:

The following application macros are available:

#### Macro 1: Standard

Drive switch-on/switch-off and enable via 2 digital inputs. Speed reference via analog input. External torque limiting via analog input. Jogging via 2 digital inputs. 2 digital inputs for external events (fault/ alarm). 2 digital inputs for emergency stop and fault acknowledgement.

#### Macro 2: Man/Const Sp

Starting and stopping of the drive via 2 digital inputs. Speed reference via analog input. Reversal of rotational direction via 1 digital input. 2 ramp sets selectable via 1 digital input. Selection of speed reference or 2 fixed speeds via 2 digital inputs. 2 digital inputs for emergency stop and fault acknowledgement.

#### Macro 3: Hand/Auto

Switchover between manual and auto. control effected via 1 digital input.

Manual control: Starting and stopping of the drive via 1 digital input. Speed reference via analog input 1. Selection of speed reference or 1 fixed

speed via 1 digital input.

Reversal of rotational direction via 1 digital input.

Automatic control:

- Starting and stopping of the drive via 1 digital input. Speed reference via analog input 2.
- Reversal of rotational direction via 1 digital input.
- 2 digital inputs for emergency stop and fault acknowledgement.

#### Macro 4: Hand/MotPot

Starting and stopping of the drive via 1 digital input.

Jogging via 1 digital input.

Speed reference via analog input. Reversal of rotational direction via 1 digital input.

Motor potentiometer function via 2 digital inputs.

Selection of speed reference or motor pot via 1 digital input.

2 digital inputs for emergency stop and fault acknowledgement.

### Macro 5: Jogging

Drive switch-on/switch-off and enable via 2 digital inputs.
Speed reference via analog input 1.
Additional reference via analog input 2.
Jogging via 2 digital inputs.
Reversal of rotational direction via 1 digital input.
2 digital inputs for emergency stop and fault acknowledgement.

#### Macro 6: Motor Pot

Drive switch-on/switch-off and enable via 2 digital inputs. Reversal of rotational direction via 1 digital input. Minimum speed can be activated via 1 digital input. Motor pot function via 2 digital inputs. 2 digital inputs for emergency stop and fault acknowledgement.

#### Macro 7: ext Field Rev

Drive switch-on/switch-off and enable via 2 digital inputs. Speed reference via analog input 1. External torque limiting via analog input 2. Jogging via 1 digital input. External field reversal can be activated via 1 digital input. 2 digital inputs for external events (fault/ alarm). 2 digital inputs for emergency stop and fault acknowledgement.

#### Macro 8: Torque Ctrl

Drive switch-on/switch-off and enable via 2 digital inputs. Torque reference via analog input. Coast Stop via 1 digital input. 2 digital inputs for external events (fault/ alarm). 2 digital inputs for emergency stop and fault acknowledgement.

**Overview of Software** 

| Description | of | I/O's | functionality |
|-------------|----|-------|---------------|
|             |    |       |               |

| 1/0 | Param | Function   |
|-----|-------|--|
| DI1 |       | Jog speed 1. Speed can be defined in parameter 5.13.   |
|     |       | Accel/Decel Ramp for Jogging can be defined in parameter 5.19/5.20.                            |
| DI2 | 1     | Jog speed 2. Speed can be defined in parameter 5.14.   |
|     |       | Accel/Decel Ramp for Jogging can be defined in parameter 5.19/5.20.                            |
| DI3 | 2.01  | External fault signal. Triggers a fault response and trips the drive                           |
| DI4 |       | External alarm signal. Triggers a warning in DCS400  |
| DI5 |       | Emergency stop. Closed-circuit principle, must be closed for operation                         |
| DI6 |       | Reset. Faultacknowledgement, reset faults signaled by the drive                                |
| DI7 |       | Drive ON / OFF. DI7=0=OFF , DI7=1=ON   |
| DI8 |       | Drive START / STOP. DI8=0=STOP , DI8=1=START   |
| DO1 | 6.11  | Ready for Run. Converter switched ON, but not yet STARTed                                      |
| DO2 | 6.12  | Running. Drive is STARTed (Current controller enabled)   |
| DO3 | 6.13  | Zero-speed signal. Motor at standstill   |
| DO4 | 6.14  | Group fault signal. Common signal for all faults or alarms                                     |
| DO5 | 6.15  | Main contactor on. Controlled by ON command (DI7)  |
| Al1 | 5.01  | Speed reference  |
| Al2 | 3.15  | External torque limitation possible. First the parameter Cur Contr Mode 3.14 has to be changed |
|     |       | from Macro depend to Lim Sp Ctr. Without changes the factory settings for torque limitation is |
|     |       | effective (100%).  |
|     | 0.05  | Speed actual   |
| AO1 | 6.05  | Speed actual   |

### Inter locking of Jog speed 1 – Jog speed 2 – Drive START

| Jog 1 | Jog 2 | START | Drive is ON (DI7=1)   |  |
|-------|-------|-------|---|--|
| DI1   | DI2   | DI8   |   |  |
| 0     | 0     | 0     | Drive is STOPped (Current controller disabled)                              |  |
| 1     | 0     | 0     | Drive STARTed via DI1, speed reference=parameter 5.13                       |  |
| х     | 1     | 0     | Drive STARTed via DI2, speed reference=parameter 5.14                       |  |
| х     | x     | 1     | Drive STARTed via START command (DI8), speed reference via analog input AI1 |  |

### Parameter settings, shaded areas are set by macro - all others are set during commissioning

| 1.01 Arm Cur Nom         2.01 Macro Select<br>[Standard]         3.04 Arm Cur Max         5.01 Speed Ref Sel<br>[Al1]         6.01 Al1 Scale 100%           1.02 Arm Volt Nom         2.02 Cmd Location<br>[Terminals]         3.07 Torque Lim Pos         5.02 Speed Meas<br>Mode         6.02 Al1 Scale 0%           1.03 Field Cur Nom         2.03 Stop Mode         3.08 Torque Lim Pos         5.03 Encoder Inc         6.03 Al2 Scale 100%           1.04 Field Volt Nom         2.03 Stop Mode         3.08 Torque Lim Neg         5.09 Accel Ramp         6.04 Al2 Scale 0%           1.05 Base Speed         3.15 Torque Ref Sel<br>[Al2]         5.10 Decel Ramp         6.05 AO1 Assign<br>[Speed Act]           1.06 Max Speed         3.17 Stall Torque         5.11 Eme Stop Ramp         6.06 AO1 Mode           3.18 Stall Time         5.12 Ramp Shape         6.07 AO1 Scale 100%           5.14 Fixed Speed 1         6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Volt Act]         [Arm Volt Act]           5.16 Speed Level 1         6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Running]         [Running]           5.17 Speed Level 2         6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]         [Arm Z]           5.19 Jog Accel Ramp         6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Fit or Alarm]         [Arm]           5.20 Jog Decel Ramp         6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Fit or Alarm]         [Arm]           5.20 Accel Ramp         6.12 DO5 Assign<br>[Sp < Lev1]         [Alarm]           6.22   | 1 - Motor Settings  | 2 - Operation Mode | 3 - Armature        | 5 - Speed Controller | 6 - Input/Output                      |
|--|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| [Standard]         [Al1]           1.02 Arm Volt Nom         2.02 Cmd Location<br>[Terminals]         3.07 Torque Lim Pos         5.02 Speed Meas<br>Mode         6.02 Al1 Scale 0%           1.03 Field Cur Nom         2.03 Stop Mode         3.08 Torque Lim Neg         5.03 Encoder Inc         6.03 Al2 Scale 100%           1.04 Field Volt Nom         2.04 Eme Stop Mode         3.14 Cur Contr Mode<br>[Speed Contr]         5.09 Accel Ramp         6.05 AO1 Assign<br>[Speed Act]           1.05 Base Speed         3.15 Torque Ref Sel<br>[Al2]         5.10 Decel Ramp         6.06 AO1 Assign<br>[Speed Act]           1.06 Max Speed         3.17 Stall Torque         5.11 Eme Stop Ramp         6.07 AO1 Scale 100%           1.06 Max Speed         3.17 Stall Torque         5.13 Fixed Speed 1         6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Volt Act]           1.06 Max Speed         3.18 Stall Time         5.13 Fixed Speed 1         6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Volt Act]           1.06 Max Speed         5.14 Fixed Speed 2         6.09 AO2 Mode           5.15 Zero Speed Lev         6.10 AO2 Scale 100%         5.15 Zero Speed Lev         6.10 AO2 Scale 100%           1.16 Speed Level 1         6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Running]         [Running]         6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]         1.30 O3 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]           1.17 Speed Level 2         6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Fit or Alarm]         5.21 Alt Par Sel         6.15 DO5 Assign<br>[Fit or Alarm]  | U                   |                    | 3.04 Arm Cur Max    |                      |                                       |
| Image: Terminals         Mode           1.03 Field Cur Nom         2.03 Stop Mode         3.08 Torque Lim Neg         5.03 Encoder Inc         6.03 Al2 Scale 100%           1.04 Field Volt Nom         2.04 Eme Stop Mode         3.14 Cur Contr Mode<br>[Speed Contr]         5.09 Accel Ramp         6.04 Al2 Scale 0%           1.05 Base Speed         3.15 Torque Ref Sel<br>[Al2]         5.10 Decel Ramp         6.05 AO1 Assign<br>[Speed Act]           1.06 Max Speed         3.17 Stall Torque         5.11 Eme Stop Ramp         6.06 AO1 Mode           3.18 Stall Time         5.12 Ramp Shape         6.07 AO1 Scale 100%           5.13 Fixed Speed 1         6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Volt Act]         6.09 AO2 Mode           6.09 AO2 Mode         5.15 Zero Speed Lev         6.10 AO2 Scale 100%           5.16 Speed Level 1         6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]         [Rdy for Run]           5.17 Speed Level 2         6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]         [Running]           5.20 Jog Decel Ramp         6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]         [Fl tor Alarm]           5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>[Sp < Lev1]   |                     | [Standard]         |                     |                      |                                       |
| 1.03 Field Cur Nom         2.03 Stop Mode         3.08 Torque Lim Neg         5.03 Encoder Inc         6.03 Al2 Scale 100%           1.04 Field Volt Nom         2.04 Eme Stop Mode         3.14 Cur Contr Mode<br>[Speed Contr]         5.09 Accel Ramp         6.04 Al2 Scale 0%           1.05 Base Speed         3.15 Torque Ref Sel<br>[Al2]         5.10 Decel Ramp         6.06 AO1 Assign<br>[Speed Act]           1.06 Max Speed         3.17 Stall Torque         5.11 Eme Stop Ramp         6.06 AO1 Mode           3.18 Stall Time         5.12 Ramp Shape         6.07 AO1 Scale 100%           5.14 Fixed Speed 1         6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Volt Act]         6.09 AO2 Mode           5.14 Fixed Speed 2         6.09 AO2 Mode         5.16 Speed Level 1         6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Ruy for Run]           5.16 Speed Level 1         6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Ruy for Run]         [Ruy for Run]         5.17 Speed Level 2         6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]           5.19 Jog Accel Ramp         5.20 Jog Decel Ramp         6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Fit or Alarm]         [Fit or Alarm]           5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>[Sp < Lev1]  | 1.02 Arm Volt Nom   | 2.02 Cmd Location  | 3.07 Torque Lim Pos | 5.02 Speed Meas      | 6.02 Al1 Scale 0%                     |
| 1.04 Field Volt Nom         2.04 Eme Stop Mode         3.14 Cur Contr Mode<br>[Speed Contr]         5.09 Accel Ramp         6.04 Al2 Scale 0%           1.05 Base Speed         3.15 Torque Ref Sel<br>[Al2]         5.10 Decel Ramp         6.05 AO1 Assign<br>[Speed Act]           1.06 Max Speed         3.17 Stall Torque         5.11 Eme Stop Ramp         6.06 AO1 Mode           3.18 Stall Time         5.12 Ramp Shape         6.07 AO1 Scale 100%           5.13 Fixed Speed 1         6.09 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Volt Act]           6.04 Al2 Scale 0%         5.13 Fixed Speed 1           6.06 AO1 Mode         5.13 Fixed Speed 1           6.07 AO1 Scale 100%         5.13 Fixed Speed 2           6.09 AO2 Mode         5.15 Zero Speed Leve           5.16 Speed Level 2         6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]           6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]         5.17 Speed Level 2           6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]         6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]           5.20 Jog Decel Ramp         6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Flt or Alarm]           5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>[Sp < Lev1]   |                     | [Terminals]        |                     | Mode                 |                                       |
| Image: Speed         [Speed Contr]         5.10 Decel Ramp         6.05 AO1 Assign<br>[Speed Act]           1.06 Max Speed         3.17 Stall Torque         5.11 Eme Stop Ramp         6.06 AO1 Mode           3.18 Stall Time         5.12 Ramp Shape         6.07 AO1 Scale 100%           5.13 Fixed Speed 1         6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Volt Act]           6.09 AO2 Mode         5.14 Fixed Speed 1         6.09 AO2 Mode           6.01 AO2 Scale 100%         5.13 Fixed Speed 2         6.09 AO2 Mode           6.01 AO2 Scale 100%         5.14 Fixed Speed 2         6.09 AO2 Mode           6.02 Mode         5.15 Zero Speed Level 6         6.10 AO2 Scale 100%           6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]         5.16 Speed Level 1         6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]           6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]         5.19 Jog Accel Ramp         6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]           6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Fit or Alarm]         5.20 Jog Decel Ramp         6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Fit or Alarm]           6.15 DO5 Assign<br>[Sp < Lev1]   | 1.03 Field Cur Nom  | 2.03 Stop Mode     | 3.08 Torque Lim Neg | 5.03 Encoder Inc     | 6.03 Al2 Scale 100%                   |
| 1.05 Base Speed         3.15 Torque Ref Sel<br>[Al2]         5.10 Decel Ramp         6.05 AO1 Assign<br>[Speed Act]           1.06 Max Speed         3.17 Stall Torque         5.11 Eme Stop Ramp         6.06 AO1 Mode           3.18 Stall Time         5.12 Ramp Shape         6.07 AO1 Scale 100%           5.13 Fixed Speed 1         6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Volt Act]           5.14 Fixed Speed 2         6.09 AO2 Mode           5.15 Zero Speed Lev         6.10 AO2 Scale 100%           5.16 Speed Level 1         6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]           5.17 Speed Level 2         6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]           5.19 Jog Accel Ramp         6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]           5.20 Jog Decel Ramp         6.15 DO5 Assign<br>[Sp < Lev1]  | 1.04 Field Volt Nom | 2.04 Eme Stop Mode | 3.14 Cur Contr Mode | 5.09 Accel Ramp      | 6.04 Al2 Scale 0%                     |
| [Al2]         [Speed Act]           1.06 Max Speed         3.17 Stall Torque         5.11 Eme Stop Ramp         6.06 AO1 Mode           3.18 Stall Time         5.12 Ramp Shape         6.07 AO1 Scale 100%           5.13 Fixed Speed 1         6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Volt Act]           6.09 AO2 Mode         5.15 Zero Speed Lev         6.10 AO2 Scale 100%           5.16 Speed Level 1         6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]         6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]           5.19 Jog Accel Ramp         6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]         6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]           5.20 Jog Decel Ramp         6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Flt or Alarm]         [Seed Act]           5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>[Sp < Lev1]   |                     |                    | [Speed Contr]       |                      |                                       |
| 1.06 Max Speed         3.17 Stall Torque         5.11 Eme Stop Ramp         6.06 AO1 Mode           3.18 Stall Time         5.12 Ramp Shape         6.07 AO1 Scale 100%           5.13 Fixed Speed 1         6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Volt Act]           5.14 Fixed Speed 2         6.09 AO2 Mode           5.15 Zero Speed Lev         6.10 AO2 Scale 100%           5.16 Speed Level 1         6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]           5.17 Speed Level 2         6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]           5.19 Jog Accel Ramp         6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]           5.20 Jog Decel Ramp         6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Fit or Alarm]           5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>[Sp < Lev1]  | 1.05 Base Speed     |                    |                     | 5.10 Decel Ramp      | 5                                     |
| 3.18 Stall Time         5.12 Ramp Shape         6.07 AO1 Scale 100%           5.13 Fixed Speed 1         6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Volt Act]           5.14 Fixed Speed 2         6.09 AO2 Mode           5.15 Zero Speed Lev         6.10 AO2 Scale 100%           5.16 Speed Level 1         6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]           5.17 Speed Level 2         6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]           5.19 Jog Accel Ramp         6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]           5.20 Jog Decel Ramp         6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Flt or Alarm]           5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>[Sp < Lev1]  |                     |                    |                     |                      |                                       |
| 5.13 Fixed Speed 1       6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Volt Act]         5.14 Fixed Speed 2       6.09 AO2 Mode         5.15 Zero Speed Lev       6.10 AO2 Scale 100%         5.16 Speed Level 1       6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]         5.17 Speed Level 2       6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]         5.19 Jog Accel Ramp       6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]         5.20 Jog Decel Ramp       6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Flt or Alarm]         5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>[Sp < Lev1]  | 1.06 Max Speed      |                    |                     | 5.11 Eme Stop Ramp   | 6.06 AO1 Mode                         |
| Image: constraint of the second sec |                     |                    | 3.18 Stall Time     | 5.12 Ramp Shape      | 6.07 AO1 Scale 100%                   |
| 5.14 Fixed Speed 2         6.09 AO2 Mode           5.15 Zero Speed Lev         6.10 AO2 Scale 100%           5.16 Speed Level 1         6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]           5.17 Speed Level 2         6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]           5.19 Jog Accel Ramp         6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]           5.20 Jog Decel Ramp         6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Flt or Alarm]           5.21 Alt Par Sel         6.15 DO5 Assign<br>[Sp < Lev1]   |                     |                    |                     | 5.13 Fixed Speed 1   | 0                                     |
| 5.15 Zero Speed Lev       6.10 AO2 Scale 100%         5.16 Speed Level 1       6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]         5.17 Speed Level 2       6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]         5.19 Jog Accel Ramp       6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]         5.20 Jog Decel Ramp       6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Flt or Alarm]         5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>[Sp < Lev1]  |                     |                    |                     |                      | [Arm Volt Act]                        |
| 5.16 Speed Level 1       6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]         5.17 Speed Level 2       6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]         5.19 Jog Accel Ramp       6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]         5.20 Jog Decel Ramp       6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Flt or Alarm]         5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>[Sp < Lev1]  |                     |                    |                     |                      | 6.09 AO2 Mode                         |
| Image: Second  |                     |                    |                     | 5.15 Zero Speed Lev  | 6.10 AO2 Scale 100%                   |
| 5.17 Speed Level 2       6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]         5.19 Jog Accel Ramp       6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]         5.20 Jog Decel Ramp       6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Flt or Alarm]         5.21 Alt Par Sel       6.15 DO5 Assign<br>[Sp < Lev1]  |                     |                    |                     | 5.16 Speed Level 1   | 0                                     |
| Image: Constraint of the second se  |                     |                    |                     |                      | [Rdy for Run]                         |
| 5.19 Jog Accel Ramp     6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]       5.20 Jog Decel Ramp     6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Flt or Alarm]       5.21 Alt Par Sel     6.15 DO5 Assign<br>[Sp < Lev1]  |                     |                    |                     | 5.17 Speed Level 2   | 0                                     |
| [Zero Speed]           5.20 Jog Decel Ramp         6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Flt or Alarm]           5.21 Alt Par Sel         6.15 DO5 Assign<br>[Sp < Lev1]   |                     |                    |                     |                      | . 0.                                  |
| 5.20 Jog Decel Ramp         6.14 DO4 Assign           [Flt or Alarm]           5.21 Alt Par Sel         6.15 DO5 Assign           [Sp < Lev1]  |                     |                    |                     | 5.19 Jog Accel Ramp  |                                       |
| [Flt or Alarm]           5.21 Alt Par Sel         6.15 DO5 Assign           [Sp < Lev1]  |                     |                    |                     |                      | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |
| 5.21 Alt Par Sel         6.15 DO5 Assign           [Sp < Lev1]   |                     |                    |                     | 5.20 Jog Decel Ramp  | 0                                     |
| [Sp < Lev1] [Main Cont On]<br>5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel 6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass  |                     |                    |                     |                      |                                       |
| 5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel 6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass  |                     |                    |                     |                      | Ŭ                                     |
|  |                     |                    |                     |                      |                                       |
|  |                     |                    |                     |                      |                                       |
| 6.23 MSW Bit 11 Ass  |                     |                    |                     |                      |                                       |
| [none]   |                     |                    |                     |                      |                                       |
| 6.24 MSW Bit 11 Ass  |                     |                    |                     |                      |                                       |
| [none]   |                     |                    |                     |                      |                                       |
| 6.25 MSW Bit 11 Ass  | <u> </u>            |                    |                     |                      |                                       |
| [none]   |                     |                    |                     |                      |                                       |

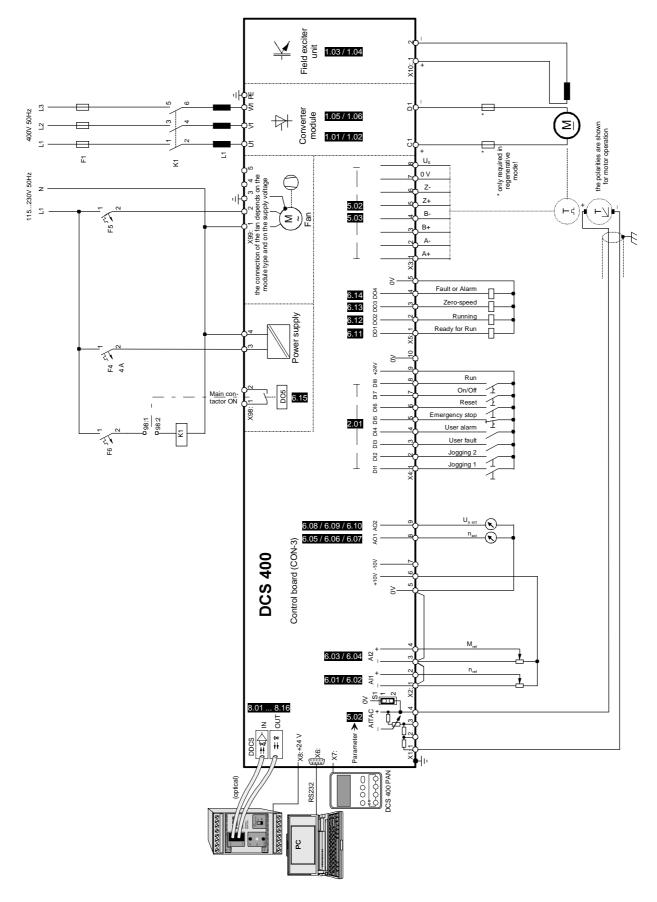


Fig. 4.2/1: Connection example application-Macro 1 - Standard

II K 4-7

| Macro de | scription |  |
|----------|-----------|--|
| I/O      | Param     | Function   |
| DI1      |           | Drive is started by closing digital input DI1 (DI=1). Switches the drive ON and START  |
| DI2      |           | Drive is stopped by opening digital input DI2 (DI2=0). DI2 has a higher priority than DI1, i.e. if DI2 is open the drive can not be started. Stop the drive in according to parameter Stop-Mode and afterwards switch the drive off. |
| DI3      | 2.01      | Direction of rotation. DI3=0=forward, DI3=1=reverse  |
| DI4      |           | 2 ramp sets selectable.<br>DI4=0=Ramp 1<br>Accel Ramp 5.09 / Decel Ramp 5.10 / Speed Reg KP 5.07 / Speed Reg TI 5.08   |
|          |           | DI4=1=Ramp 2<br>Alt Accel Ramp 5.24 / Alt Decel Ramp 5.25 / Alt Speed KP 5.22 / Alt Speed TI 5.23  |
| DI5      |           | Emergency stop. Closed-circuit principle, must be closed for operation   |
| DI6      |           | Reset. Faultacknowledgement, reset faults signaled by the drive  |
| DI7      |           | Fixed speed 1, speed can be defined in parameter 5.13 (Ramp 5.19/5.20)   |
| DI8      |           | Fixed speed 2, speed can be defined in parameter 5.14 (Ramp 5.19/5.20)   |
| DO1      | 6.11      | Ready for On. Elektronics powered up, no fault signals present   |
| DO2      | 6.12      | Running. Current controller enabled  |
| DO3      | 6.13      | Fault signal. Converter tripped  |
| DO4      | 6.14      | Zero-speed signal. Motor at standstill   |
| DO5      | 6.15      | Main contactor on. Controlled by START command (DI1)   |
| Al1      | 5.01      | Speed reference  |
| AO1      | 6.05      | Speed actual   |
| AO2      | 6.08      | Armature current actual  |

### Selection of speed reference or 2 fixed speed via DI7 and DI8

| DI7 | DI8 | Drive is STARTed (DI1=1)   |
|-----|-----|--|
| 0   | 0   | Speed reference via analog input Al1                                   |
| 1   | 0   | Fixed speed 1, speed can be defined in parameter 5.13 (Ramp 5.19/5.20) |
| х   | 1   | Fixed speed 2, speed can be defined in parameter 5.14 (Ramp 5.19/5.20) |

#### Parameter settings, shaded areas are set by macro - all others are set during commissioning

|                     | naded areas are set by ma           | 3 - Armature                         | 5 - Speed Controller                | 6 Input/Output                    |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 - Motor Settings  | 2 - Operation Mode                  |                                      |                                     | 6 - Input/Output                  |
| 1.01 Arm Cur Nom    | 2.01 Macro Select<br>[Man/Const Sp] | 3.04 Arm Cur Max                     | 5.01 Speed Ref Sel<br>[AI1]         | 6.01 Al1 Scale 100%               |
| 1.02 Arm Volt Nom   | 2.02 Cmd Location<br>[Terminals]    | 3.07 Torque Lim Pos                  | 5.02 Speed Meas<br>Mode             | 6.02 AI1 Scale 0%                 |
| 1.03 Field Cur Nom  | 2.03 Stop Mode                      | 3.08 Torque Lim Neg                  | 5.03 Encoder Inc                    | 6.03 AI2 Scale 100%               |
| 1.04 Field Volt Nom | 2.04 Eme Stop Mode                  | 3.14 Cur Contr Mode<br>[Speed Contr] | 5.09 Accel Ramp                     | 6.04 Al2 Scale 0%                 |
| 1.05 Base Speed     |                                     | 3.15 Torque Ref Sel<br>[Al2]         | 5.10 Decel Ramp                     | 6.05 AO1 Assign<br>[Speed Act]    |
| 1.06 Max Speed      |                                     | 3.17 Stall Torque                    | 5.11 Eme Stop Ramp                  | 6.06 AO1 Mode                     |
|                     |                                     | 3.18 Stall Time                      | 5.12 Ramp Shape                     | 6.07 AO1 Scale 100%               |
|                     |                                     |                                      | 5.13 Fixed Speed 1                  | 6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Cur Act]  |
|                     |                                     |                                      | 5.14 Fixed Speed 2                  | 6.09 AO2 Mode                     |
|                     |                                     |                                      | 5.15 Zero Speed Lev                 | 6.10 AO2 Scale 100%               |
|                     |                                     |                                      | 5.16 Speed Level 1                  | 6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy On]       |
|                     |                                     |                                      | 5.17 Speed Level 2                  | 6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]      |
|                     |                                     |                                      | 5.19 Jog Accel Ramp                 | 6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Fault]        |
|                     |                                     |                                      | 5.20 Jog Decel Ramp                 | 6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]   |
|                     |                                     |                                      | 5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>[DI4]           | 6.15 DO5 Assign<br>[Main Cont On] |
|                     |                                     |                                      | 5.24 Alt Accel Ramp                 | 6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                     |                                      | 5.25 Alt Decel Ramp                 | 6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                     |                                      | 5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel<br>[Const Zero] | 6.24 MSW Bit 13 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                     |                                      |                                     | 6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass               |
|                     |                                     |                                      |                                     | [none]                            |

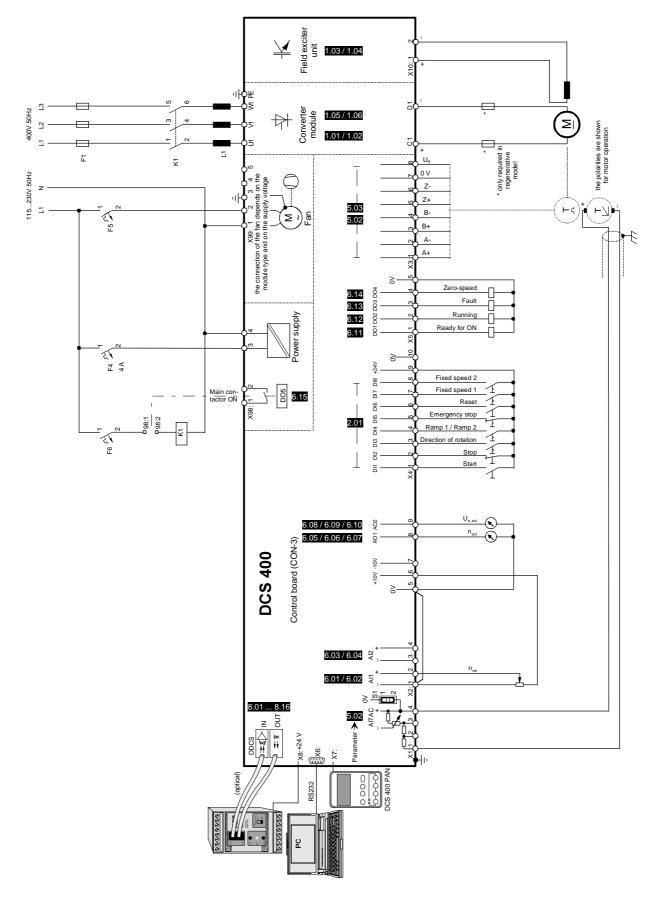


Fig. 4.2/2: Connection example application-Macro 2 - Man/Const Sp

II K 4-9

| I/O        | Param | Function  |
|------------|-------|---|
| DI1        |       | Start / Stop Hand. Start and stop the drive. DI1=0=STOP, DI1=1=START  |
|            |       | Start switches the drive ON and START. Stop the drive in according to parameter Stop-Mode and                             |
|            |       | afterwards switch the drive off.  |
| DI2        |       | Switchover between manual and automatic control.  |
|            |       | Present Start/Stop command will be of effect after switching:   |
|            |       | DI2=0=Hand control:   |
|            |       | The drive is started and stoped via digital input DI1.  |
|            |       | Speed reference via analog input AI1.   |
|            |       | Direction of rotation via digital input DI3.  |
|            |       | Selection of speed reference or 1 fixed speed via digital input DI4   |
|            |       | DI2=1=Automatic control:  |
|            |       | The drive is started and stoped via digital input DI8.  |
|            |       | Speed reference from PLC via analog input Al2.  |
| DI3        | 2.01  | Direction of rotation via digital input DI7.<br>Direction of rotation Hand, DI3=0=forward, DI3=1=reverse                  |
| DI3<br>DI4 | 2.01  | Selection of speed reference Al1 / Fixed speed 1 Hand   |
| DI4        |       | DI4=0=speed reference via analog input Al1  |
|            |       | DI4=0=speed reference via analog input An<br>DI4=1=fixed speed 1, speed can be defined in parameter 5.13 (Ramp 5.19/5.20) |
| DI5        |       | Emergency stop. Closed-circuit principle, must be closed for operation  |
| DI6        |       | Reset. Faultacknowledgement, reset faults signaled by the drive   |
| DI7        |       | Direction of rotation Auto. DI7=0=forward , DI3=1=reverse   |
| DI8        |       | Start / Stop <b>Auto.</b> Start and stop the drive. DI8=0=STOP, DI8=1=START   |
| DIO        |       | Start switches the drive ON and START. Stop the drive in according to parameter Stop-Mode and                             |
|            |       | afterwards switch the drive off.  |
| DO1        | 6.11  | Ready for On. Elektronics powered up, no fault signals present  |
| DO2        | 6.12  | Running. Current controller enabled   |
| DO3        | 6.13  | Fault signal. Converter tripped   |
| DO4        | 6.14  | Zero-speed signal. Motor at standstill  |
| DO5        | 6.15  | Main contactor on. Controlled by START command (DI1)  |
| AI1        | 5.01  | Speed refernece Hand  |
| Al2        | 5.26  | Speed reference Auto, from PLC  |
| AO1        | 6.05  | Speed actual  |
| AO2        | 6.08  | Armature current actual   |

Parameter settings, shaded areas are set by macro - all others are set during commissioning

| 1 - Motor Settings  | 2 - Operation Mode               | 3 - Armature                         | 5 - Speed Controller                | 6 - Input/Output                 |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1.01 Arm Cur Nom    | 2.01 Macro Select<br>[Hand/Auto] | 3.04 Arm Cur Max                     | 5.01 Speed Ref Sel<br>[Al1]         | 6.01 AI1 Scale 100%              |
| 1.02 Arm Volt Nom   | 2.02 Cmd Location<br>[Terminals] | 3.07 Torque Lim Pos                  | 5.02 Speed Meas<br>Mode             | 6.02 AI1 Scale 0%                |
| 1.03 Field Cur Nom  | 2.03 Stop Mode                   | 3.08 Torque Lim Neg                  | 5.03 Encoder Inc                    | 6.03 Al2 Scale 100%              |
| 1.04 Field Volt Nom | 2.04 Eme Stop Mode               | 3.14 Cur Contr Mode<br>[Speed Contr] | 5.09 Accel Ramp                     | 6.04 AI2 Scale 0%                |
| 1.05 Base Speed     |                                  | 3.15 Torque Ref Sel<br>[Const Zero]  | 5.10 Decel Ramp                     | 6.05 AO1 Assign<br>[Speed Act]   |
| 1.06 Max Speed      |                                  | 3.17 Stall Torque                    | 5.11 Eme Stop Ramp                  | 6.06 AO1 Mode                    |
|                     |                                  | 3.18 Stall Time                      | 5.12 Ramp Shape                     | 6.07 AO1 Scale 100%              |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.13 Fixed Speed 1                  | 6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Cur Act] |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.14 Fixed Speed 2                  | 6.09 AO2 Mode                    |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.15 Zero Speed Lev                 | 6.10 AO2 Scale 100%              |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.16 Speed Level 1                  | 6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy On]      |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.17 Speed Level 2                  | 6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]     |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.19 Jog Accel Ramp                 | 6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Fault]       |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.20 Jog Decel Ramp                 | 6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]  |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.21 Alt Par Sel                    | 6.15 DO5 Assign                  |
|                     |                                  |                                      | [Sp < Lev1]                         | [Main Cont On]                   |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel<br>[Const Zero] | 6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>[none]    |
|                     |                                  |                                      |                                     | 6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass<br>[none]    |
|                     |                                  |                                      |                                     | 6.24 MSW Bit 13 Ass<br>[none]    |
|                     |                                  |                                      |                                     | 6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>[none]    |

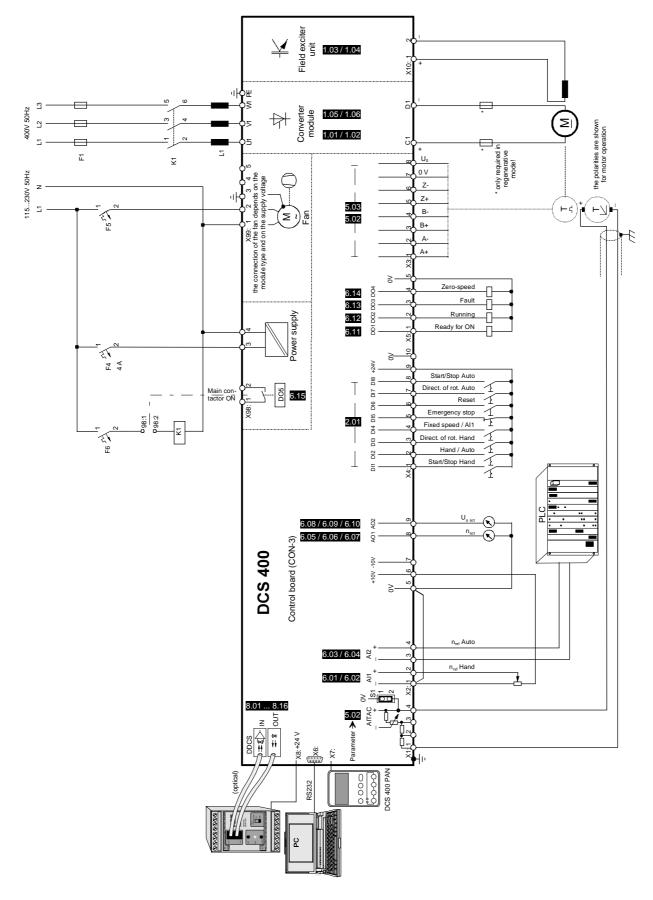


Fig. 4.2/3: Connection example application-Macro 3 - Hand/Auto

II K 4-11

| Descriptio | on of I/O's f | unctionality  |
|------------|---------------|---|
| I/O        | Param         | Function  |
| DI1        |               | Start / Stop. Start and stop the drive. DI1=0=STOP, DI1=1=START.<br>Start switches the drive ON and START. Stop the drive in according to parameter Stop-Mode and<br>afterwards switch the drive off. |
| DI2        |               | Jog speed 1. Speed can be defined in parameter 5.13.<br>Accel/Decel Ramp for Jogging can be defined in parameter 5.19/5.20.<br>Jog speed 1 has precedence above AI1/MotPot                            |
| DI3        |               | Direction of rotation. DI3=0=forward , DI3=1=reverse  |
| DI4        | 2.01          | Al1/MotPot, Selection of speed reference or motor pot function.<br>DI4=0=speed reference via Al1<br>DI4=1=Motor pot function via DI7 und DI8  |
| DI5        |               | Emergency stop. Closed-circuit principle, must be closed for operation  |
| DI6        |               | Reset. Faultacknowledgement, reset faults signaled by the drive   |
| DI7        |               | Motor pot function "faster". Accel Ramp 5.09  |
| DI8        |               | Motor pot function "slower". Decel Rampe 5.10. Slower has precedence above faster.  |
| DO1        | 6.11          | Ready for On. Elektronics powered up, no fault signals present  |
| DO2        | 6.12          | Running. Current controller enabled   |
| DO3        | 6.13          | Fault signal. Converter tripped   |
| DO4        | 6.14          | Zero-speed signal. Motor at standstill  |
| DO5        | 6.15          | Main contactor on. Controlled by START command (DI1)  |
| Al1        | 5.01          | Speed reference   |
| AO1        | 6.05          | Speed actual  |
| AO2        | 6.08          | Armature current actual   |

Parameter settings, shaded areas are set by macro - all others are set during commissioning

| 1 - Motor Settings  | 2 - Operation Mode                 | 3 - Armature                         | 5 - Speed Controller                | 6 - Input/Output                  |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1.01 Arm Cur Nom    | 2.01 Macro Select<br>[Hand/MotPot] | 3.04 Arm Cur Max                     | 5.01 Speed Ref Sel<br>[AI1]         | 6.01 AI1 Scale 100%               |
| 1.02 Arm Volt Nom   | 2.02 Cmd Location<br>[Terminals]   | 3.07 Torque Lim Pos                  | 5.02 Speed Meas<br>Mode             | 6.02 AI1 Scale 0%                 |
| 1.03 Field Cur Nom  | 2.03 Stop Mode                     | 3.08 Torque Lim Neg                  | 5.03 Encoder Inc                    | 6.03 Al2 Scale 100%               |
| 1.04 Field Volt Nom | 2.04 Eme Stop Mode                 | 3.14 Cur Contr Mode<br>[Speed Contr] | 5.09 Accel Ramp                     | 6.04 AI2 Scale 0%                 |
| 1.05 Base Speed     |                                    | 3.15 Torque Ref Sel<br>[Al2]         | 5.10 Decel Ramp                     | 6.05 AO1 Assign<br>[Speed Act]    |
| 1.06 Max Speed      |                                    | 3.17 Stall Torque                    | 5.11 Eme Stop Ramp                  | 6.06 AO1 Mode                     |
|                     |                                    | 3.18 Stall Time                      | 5.12 Ramp Shape                     | 6.07 AO1 Scale 100%               |
|                     |                                    |                                      | 5.13 Fixed Speed 1                  | 6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Cur Act]  |
|                     |                                    |                                      | 5.14 Fixed Speed 2                  | 6.09 AO2 Mode                     |
|                     |                                    |                                      | 5.15 Zero Speed Lev                 | 6.10 AO2 Scale 100%               |
|                     |                                    |                                      | 5.16 Speed Level 1                  | 6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy On]       |
|                     |                                    |                                      | 5.17 Speed Level 2                  | 6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]      |
|                     |                                    |                                      | 5.19 Jog Accel Ramp                 | 6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Fault]        |
|                     |                                    |                                      | 5.20 Jog Decel Ramp                 | 6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]   |
|                     |                                    |                                      | 5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>[Sp < Lev1]     | 6.15 DO5 Assign<br>[Main Cont On] |
|                     |                                    |                                      | 5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel<br>[Const Zero] | 6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                    |                                      |                                     | 6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                    |                                      |                                     | 6.24 MSW Bit 13 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                    |                                      |                                     | 6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>[none]     |

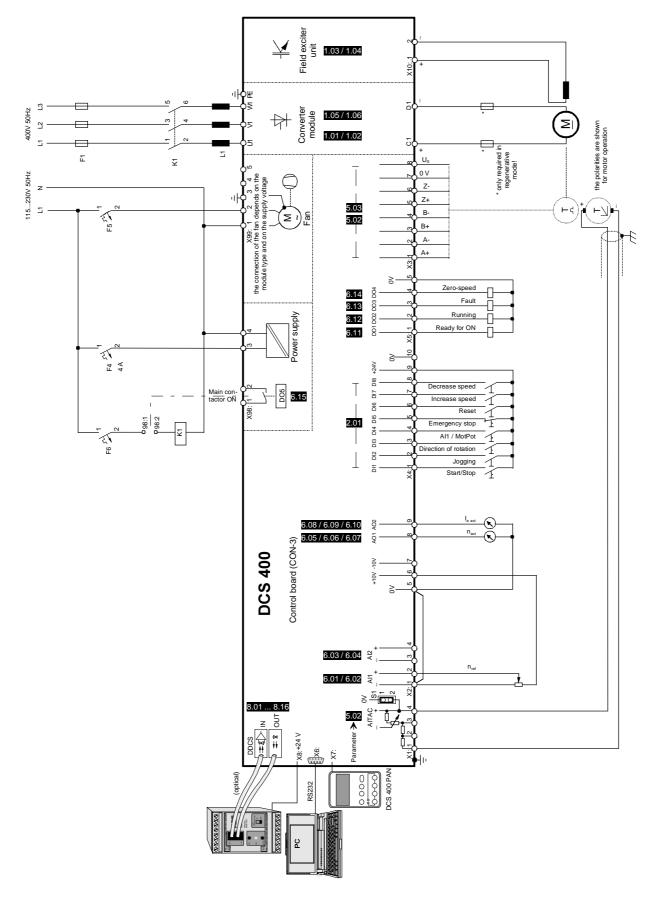


Fig. 4.2/4: Connection example application-Macro 4 - Hand/MotPot

II K 4-13

| Description of I/O's functionality |       |  |  |  |  |
|------------------------------------|-------|--|--|--|--|
| I/O                                | Param | Function   |  |  |  |
| DI1                                |       | Direction of rotation. DI1=0=forward , DI1=1=reverse                   |  |  |  |
| DI2                                |       | Jog speed 1. Speed can be defined in parameter 5.13.                   |  |  |  |
|                                    |       | Accel/Decel Ramp for Jogging can be defined in parameter 5.19/5.20.    |  |  |  |
| DI3                                |       | Jog speed 2. Speed can be defined in parameter 5.14.                   |  |  |  |
|                                    |       | Accel/Decel Ramp for Jogging can be defined in parameter 5.19/5.20.    |  |  |  |
| DI4                                | 2.01  | not used   |  |  |  |
| DI5                                |       | Emergency stop. Closed-circuit principle, must be closed for operation |  |  |  |
| DI6                                |       | Reset. Faultacknowledgement, reset faults signaled by the drive        |  |  |  |
| DI7                                |       | Drive ON / OFF. DI7=0=OFF, DI7=1=ON                                    |  |  |  |
| DI8                                |       | Drive START / STOP. DI8=0=STOP , DI8=1=START                           |  |  |  |
| DO1                                | 6.11  | Ready for Run. Converter switched ON, but not yet STARTed              |  |  |  |
| DO2                                | 6.12  | Zero-speed signal. Motor at standstill                                 |  |  |  |
| DO3                                | 6.13  | At set point. Speed reference = speed actual                           |  |  |  |
| DO4                                | 6.14  | Group fault signal. Common signal for all faults or alarms             |  |  |  |
| DO5                                | 6.15  | Main contactor on. Controlled by ON command (DI7)                      |  |  |  |
| Al1                                | 5.01  | Speed reference  |  |  |  |
| Al2                                | 5.26  | Auxiliary reference  |  |  |  |
| AO1                                | 6.05  | Speed actual   |  |  |  |
| AO2                                | 6.08  | Torque actual  |  |  |  |

### Mutual locking of Jog speed 1 – Jog speed 2 – Drive START

|   | Jog 1 | Jog 2 | START | Drive is ON (DI7=1)   |  |
|---|-------|-------|-------|---|--|
|   | DI2   | DI3   | DI8   |   |  |
| Γ | 0     | 0     | 0     | Drive is STOPped (Current controller disabled)                              |  |
|   | 1     | 0     | 0     | Drive STARTed via DI1, speed reference=parameter 5.13                       |  |
|   | х     | 1     | 0     | Drive STARTed via DI2, speed reference=parameter 5.14                       |  |
|   | х     | х     | 1     | Drive STARTed via START command (DI8), speed reference via analog input Al1 |  |

#### Parameter settings, shaded areas are set by macro - all others are set during commissioning

| 1 - Motor Settings  | 2 - Operation Mode               | 3 - Armature                         | 5 - Speed Controller            | 6 - Input/Output                  |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1.01 Arm Cur Nom    | 2.01 Macro Select<br>[Jogging]   | 3.04 Arm Cur Max                     | 5.01 Speed Ref Sel<br>[AI1]     | 6.01 Al1 Scale 100%               |
| 1.02 Arm Volt Nom   | 2.02 Cmd Location<br>[Terminals] | 3.07 Torque Lim Pos                  | 5.02 Speed Meas<br>Mode         | 6.02 Al1 Scale 0%                 |
| 1.03 Field Cur Nom  | 2.03 Stop Mode                   | 3.08 Torque Lim Neg                  | 5.03 Encoder Inc                | 6.03 AI2 Scale 100%               |
| 1.04 Field Volt Nom | 2.04 Eme Stop Mode               | 3.14 Cur Contr Mode<br>[Speed Contr] | 5.09 Accel Ramp                 | 6.04 Al2 Scale 0%                 |
| 1.05 Base Speed     |                                  | 3.15 Torque Ref Sel<br>[Const Zero]  | 5.10 Decel Ramp                 | 6.05 AO1 Assign<br>[Speed Act]    |
| 1.06 Max Speed      |                                  | 3.17 Stall Torque                    | 5.11 Eme Stop Ramp              | 6.06 AO1 Mode                     |
|                     |                                  | 3.18 Stall Time                      | 5.12 Ramp Shape                 | 6.07 AO1 Scale 100%               |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.13 Fixed Speed 1              | 6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Torque Act]   |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.14 Fixed Speed 2              | 6.09 AO2 Mode                     |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.15 Zero Speed Lev             | 6.10 AO2 Scale 100%               |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.16 Speed Level 1              | 6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]  |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.17 Speed Level 2              | 6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]   |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.19 Jog Accel Ramp             | 6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[At Setpoint]  |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.20 Jog Decel Ramp             | 6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Flt or Alarm] |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>[Sp < Lev1] | 6.15 DO5 Assign<br>[Main Cont On] |
|                     |                                  |                                      | 5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel<br>[Al2]    | 6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                  |                                      |                                 | 6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                  |                                      |                                 | 6.24 MSW Bit 13 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                  |                                      |                                 | 6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>[none]     |

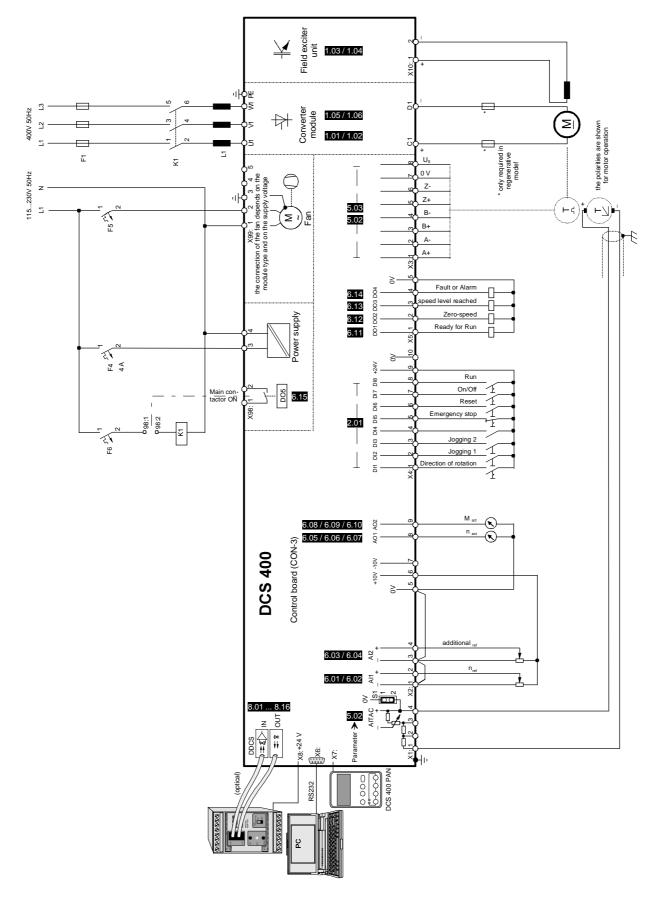


Fig. 4.2/5: Connection example application-Macro 5 - Jogging

II K 4-15

| Descriptio | on of I/O's f | unctionality   |
|------------|---------------|--|
| I/O        | Param         | Function   |
| DI1        |               | Direction of rotation. DI1=0=forward , DI1=1=reverse   |
| DI2        |               | Motor pot function "faster". Accel Ramp 5.09   |
| DI3        |               | Motor pot function "slower". Decel Ramp 5.10.  |
|            |               | Slower has precedence above faster.  |
| DI4        | 2.01          | Minimum speed. Speed can be defined in parameter 5.13. When the drive is STARTed the speed will be accelerated to this minimum speed and it is not possible to set the speed below this minimum with motor pot function. |
| DI5        |               | Emergency stop. Closed-circuit principle, must be closed for operation   |
| DI6        |               | Reset. Faultacknowledgement, reset faults signaled by the drive  |
| DI7        |               | Drive ON / OFF. DI7=0=OFF , DI7=1=ON   |
| DI8        |               | Drive START / STOP. DI8=0=STOP , DI8=1=START   |
| DO1        | 6.11          | Ready for Run. Converter switched ON, but not yet STARTed  |
| DO2        | 6.12          | $n_{max}$ reached ( $n_{max}$ can be defined in parameter 5.16) $n_{ax} \ge$ Level 1 / Level2  |
| DO3        | 6.13          | $n_{min}$ reached ( $n_{min}$ can be defined in parameter 5.17) $n_{act} \ge$ Level 1  |
| DO4        | 6.14          | Group fault signal. Common signal for all faults or alarms   |
| DO5        | 6.15          | Main contactor on. Controlled by ON command (DI7)  |
| AO1        | 6.05          | Speed actual   |
| AO2        | 6.08          | Armature voltage actual  |

Parameter settings, shaded areas are set by macro - all others are set during commissioning

| 1 - Motor Settings  | 2 - Operation Mode | 3 - Armature        | 5 - Speed Controller | 6 - Input/Output                   |
|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1.01 Arm Cur Nom    | 2.01 Macro Select  | 3.04 Arm Cur Max    | 5.01 Speed Ref Sel   | 6.01 AI1 Scale 100%                |
|                     | [Motor Pot]        |                     | [Const Zero]         |                                    |
| 1.02 Arm Volt Nom   | 2.02 Cmd Location  | 3.07 Torque Lim Pos | 5.02 Speed Meas      | 6.02 AI1 Scale 0%                  |
|                     | [Terminals]        |                     | Mode                 |                                    |
| 1.03 Field Cur Nom  | 2.03 Stop Mode     | 3.08 Torque Lim Neg | 5.03 Encoder Inc     | 6.03 AI2 Scale 100%                |
| 1.04 Field Volt Nom | 2.04 Eme Stop Mode | 3.14 Cur Contr Mode | 5.09 Accel Ramp      | 6.04 AI2 Scale 0%                  |
|                     |                    | [Speed Contr]       |                      |                                    |
| 1.05 Base Speed     |                    | 3.15 Torque Ref Sel | 5.10 Decel Ramp      | 6.05 AO1 Assign                    |
|                     |                    | [AI2]               |                      | [Speed Act]                        |
| 1.06 Max Speed      |                    | 3.17 Stall Torque   | 5.11 Eme Stop Ramp   | 6.06 AO1 Mode                      |
|                     |                    | 3.18 Stall Time     | 5.12 Ramp Shape      | 6.07 AO1 Scale 100%                |
|                     |                    |                     | 5.13 Fixed Speed 1   | 6.08 AO2 Assign                    |
|                     |                    |                     |                      | [Arm Volt Act]                     |
|                     |                    |                     | 5.14 Fixed Speed 2   | 6.09 AO2 Mode                      |
|                     |                    |                     | 5.15 Zero Speed Lev  | 6.10 AO2 Scale 100%                |
|                     |                    |                     | 5.16 Speed Level 1   | 6.11 DO1 Assign                    |
|                     |                    |                     |                      | [Rdy for Run]                      |
|                     |                    |                     | 5.17 Speed Level 2   | 6.12 DO2 Assign                    |
|                     |                    |                     |                      | [Speed Level 1]                    |
|                     |                    |                     | 5.19 Jog Accel Ramp  | 6.13 DO3 Assign                    |
|                     |                    |                     | 5.20 Jog Decel Ramp  | [Speed Level 2]<br>6.14 DO4 Assign |
|                     |                    |                     | 5.20 JUg Decer Kamp  | [Flt or Alarm]                     |
|                     |                    |                     | 5.21 Alt Par Sel     | 6.15 DO5 Assign                    |
|                     |                    |                     | [Sp < Lev1]          | [Main Cont On]                     |
|                     |                    |                     | 5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel  | 6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass                |
|                     |                    |                     | [Const Zero]         | [none]                             |
|                     |                    |                     |                      | 6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass                |
|                     |                    |                     |                      | [none]                             |
|                     |                    |                     |                      | 6.24 MSW Bit 13 Ass                |
|                     |                    |                     |                      | [none]                             |
|                     |                    |                     |                      | 6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass                |
|                     |                    |                     |                      | [none]                             |

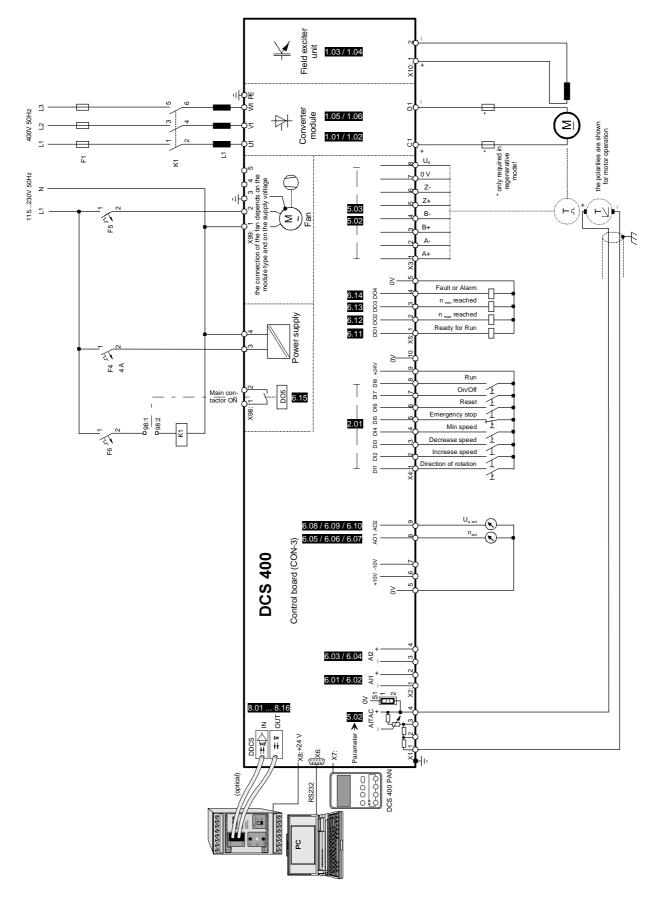


Fig. 4.2/6: Connection example application-Macro 6 - Motor Pot

II K 4-17

| I/O        | Param | Function  |
|------------|-------|---|
| DI1        |       | External field reversal with external field reversing switch. Only for 2Q application.  |
|            |       | DI1=0=no field reversal   |
|            |       | DI1=1=field reversal  |
|            |       | Depend on field reversal (DI1=1) the signal "Field reversal active" has log. state "1".                                       |
|            |       | Field reversal is only possible when the drive is OFF (DI7=0).  |
|            |       | When field reversal is active the polarity of speed actual value is changed in the software.                                  |
|            |       | It's recommended to use a remanence contactor relay to store the state of this relay when the main                            |
| DIO        | 0.04  | supply failes. Otherwise the relay contactors can burn due to the field inductance.   |
| DI2        | 2.01  | Jog speed 1. Speed can be defined in parameter 5.13.  |
| DI3        | -     | Accel/Decel Ramp for Jogging can be defined in parameter 5.19/5.20.   |
| DI3<br>DI4 | -     | External fault signal. Triggers a fault response and trips the drive<br>External alarm signal. Triggers a warning in DCS400   |
| DI4<br>DI5 | 1     | External alarm signal. Triggers a warning in DCS400<br>Emergency stop. Closed-circuit principle, must be closed for operation |
| DIS<br>DI6 | 1     | Reset. Faultacknowledgement, reset faults signaled by the drive   |
| DI0        | ł     | Drive ON / OFF. DI7=0=OFF , DI7=1=ON  |
| DI8        | -     | Drive START / STOP. DI/=0=STOP , DI/=1=START  |
| DI0<br>DO1 | 6.11  | Ready for Run. Converter switched ON, but not yet STARTed   |
| DO1<br>DO2 | 6.12  | Running. Drive is STARTed (Current controller enabled)  |
| DO2<br>DO3 | 6.13  | Field reversal active   |
| D03<br>D04 | 6.13  | Group fault signal. Common signal for all faults or alarms  |
| D04<br>D05 | 6.14  | Main contactor on. Controlled by ON command (DI7)   |
| Al1        | 5.01  | Speed reference   |
| AI1<br>AI2 | 3.15  | External torque limitation possible. First the parameter <b>Cur Contr Mode 3.14</b> has to be changed                         |
| AIZ        | 3.15  | from Macro depend to Lim Sp Ctr. Without changes the factory settings for torque limitation is                                |
|            |       | effective ( <b>100%</b> ).  |
| AO1        | 6.05  | Speed actual  |
| AO2        | 6.08  | Armatue voltage actual  |

Parameter settings, shaded areas are set by macro - all others are set during commissioning

| 1 - Motor Settings  | 2 - Operation Mode                   | 3 - Armature                         | 5 - Speed Controller                | 6 - Input/Output                  |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1.01 Arm Cur Nom    | 2.01 Macro Select<br>[ext Field Rev] | 3.04 Arm Cur Max                     | 5.01 Speed Ref Sel<br>[AI1]         | 6.01 AI1 Scale 100%               |
| 1.02 Arm Volt Nom   | 2.02 Cmd Location<br>[Terminals]     | 3.07 Torque Lim Pos                  | 5.02 Speed Meas<br>Mode             | 6.02 AI1 Scale 0%                 |
| 1.03 Field Cur Nom  | 2.03 Stop Mode                       | 3.08 Torque Lim Neg                  | 5.03 Encoder Inc                    | 6.03 Al2 Scale 100%               |
| 1.04 Field Volt Nom | 2.04 Eme Stop Mode                   | 3.14 Cur Contr Mode<br>[Speed Contr] | 5.09 Accel Ramp                     | 6.04 AI2 Scale 0%                 |
| 1.05 Base Speed     |                                      | 3.15 Torque Ref Sel<br>[Al2]         | 5.10 Decel Ramp                     | 6.05 AO1 Assign<br>[Speed Act]    |
| 1.06 Max Speed      |                                      | 3.17 Stall Torque                    | 5.11 Eme Stop Ramp                  | 6.06 AO1 Mode                     |
|                     |                                      | 3.18 Stall Time                      | 5.12 Ramp Shape                     | 6.07 AO1 Scale 100%               |
|                     |                                      |                                      | 5.13 Fixed Speed 1                  | 6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Arm Volt Act] |
|                     |                                      |                                      | 5.14 Fixed Speed 2                  | 6.09 AO2 Mode                     |
|                     |                                      |                                      | 5.15 Zero Speed Lev                 | 6.10 AO2 Scale 100%               |
|                     |                                      |                                      | 5.16 Speed Level 1                  | 6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]  |
|                     |                                      |                                      | 5.17 Speed Level 2                  | 6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]      |
|                     |                                      |                                      | 5.19 Jog Accel Ramp                 | 6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[FieldRev Act] |
|                     |                                      |                                      | 5.20 Jog Decel Ramp                 | 6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Flt or Alarm] |
|                     |                                      |                                      | 5.21 Alt Par Sel                    | 6.15 DO5 Assign                   |
|                     |                                      |                                      | [Sp < Lev1]                         | [Main Cont On]                    |
|                     |                                      |                                      | 5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel<br>[Const Zero] | 6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                      |                                      |                                     | 6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                      |                                      |                                     | 6.24 MSW Bit 13 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                      |                                      |                                     | 6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>[none]     |

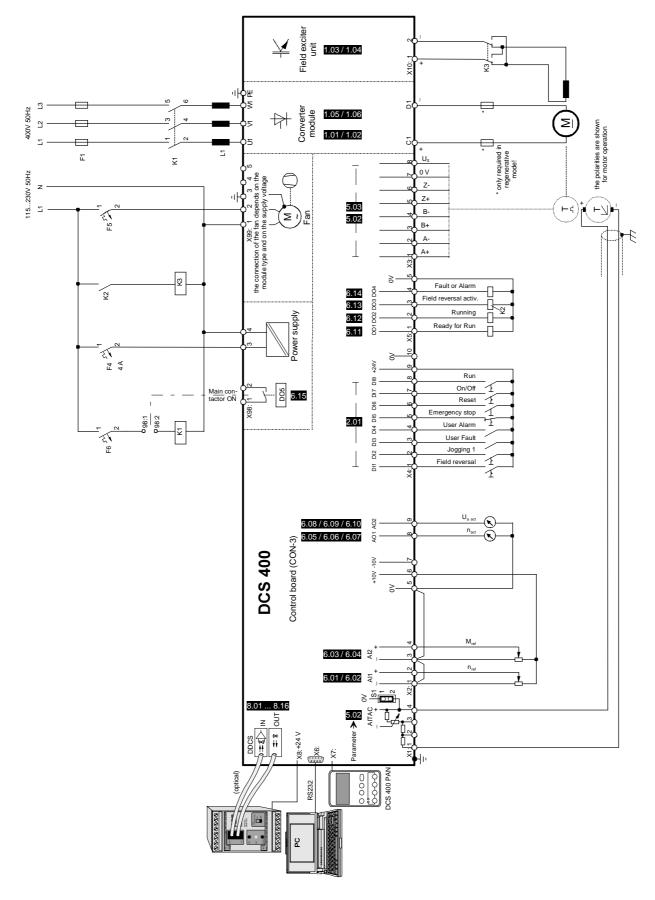


Fig. 4.2/7: Connection example application-Macro 7 - ext Field Rev

II K 4-19

| Descriptio | on of I/O's f | unctionality  |
|------------|---------------|---|
| I/O        | Param         | Funktion  |
| DI1        |               | COAST. Closed-circuit principle, must be closed for operation.<br>COAST is the fastest way to stop the current controller. The current controller will decrease the<br>armature current to zero as fast as possible. This command will stop the drive so that the motor is<br>left running and friction together with the load will decrease the speed to zero. |
| DI2        |               | not used  |
| DI3        |               | External fault signal. Triggers a fault response and trips the drive  |
| DI4        | 2.01          | External alarm signal. Triggers a warning in DCS400   |
| DI5        |               | Emergency stop. Closed-circuit principle, must be closed for operation.<br>In case of Emergencey stop the drive will be changed to speed control and stopped the drive in according to parameter Eme Stop Mode (2.04)   |
| DI6        |               | Reset. Faultacknowledgement, reset faults signaled by the drive   |
| DI7        |               | Drive ON / OFF. DI7=0=OFF , DI7=1=ON  |
| DI8        |               | Drive START / STOP. DI8=0=STOP, DI8=1=START.<br>In case of STOP command the drive will be changed to speed control and stopped the drive in according to parameter Stop Mode (2.03).  |
| DO1        | 6.11          | Ready for Run. Converter switched ON, but not yet STARTed   |
| DO2        | 6.12          | Running. Drive is STARTed (Current controller enabled)  |
| DO3        | 6.13          | Zero-speed signal. Motor at standstill  |
| DO4        | 6.14          | Group fault signal. Common signal for all faults or alarms  |
| DO5        | 6.15          | Main contactor on. Controlled by ON command (DI7)   |
| Al1        | 5.01          | Torque reference  |
| AO1        | 6.05          | Speed actual  |
| AO2        | 6.08          | Torque actual   |

Parameter settings, shaded areas are set by macro - all others are set during commissioning

| 1 - Motor Settings  | 2 - Operation Mode                  | 3 - Armature                          | 5 - Speed Controller                | 6 - Input/Output                  |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1.01 Arm Cur Nom    | 2.01 Macro Select<br>[Torque Cntrl] | 3.04 Arm Cur Max                      | 5.01 Speed Ref Sel<br>[Const Zero]  | 6.01 AI1 Scale 100%               |
| 1.02 Arm Volt Nom   | [Terminals]                         |                                       | 5.02 Speed Meas<br>Mode             | 6.02 AI1 Scale 0%                 |
| 1.03 Field Cur Nom  | 2.03 Stop Mode                      | 3.08 Torque Lim Neg                   | 5.03 Encoder Inc                    | 6.03 AI2 Scale 100%               |
| 1.04 Field Volt Nom | 2.04 Eme Stop Mode                  | 3.14 Cur Contr Mode<br>[Torque Contr] | 5.09 Accel Ramp                     | 6.04 AI2 Scale 0%                 |
| 1.05 Base Speed     |                                     | 3.15 Torque Ref Sel<br>[AI1]          | 5.10 Decel Ramp                     | 6.05 AO1 Assign<br>[Speed Act]    |
| 1.06 Max Speed      |                                     | 3.17 Stall Torque                     | 5.11 Eme Stop Ramp                  | 6.06 AO1 Mode                     |
|                     |                                     | 3.18 Stall Time                       | 5.12 Ramp Shape                     | 6.07 AO1 Scale 100%               |
|                     |                                     |                                       | 5.13 Fixed Speed 1                  | 6.08 AO2 Assign<br>[Torque Act]   |
|                     |                                     |                                       | 5.14 Fixed Speed 2                  | 6.09 AO2 Mode                     |
|                     |                                     |                                       | 5.15 Zero Speed Lev                 | 6.10 AO2 Scale 100%               |
|                     |                                     |                                       | 5.16 Speed Level 1                  | 6.11 DO1 Assign<br>[Rdy for Run]  |
|                     |                                     |                                       | 5.17 Speed Level 2                  | 6.12 DO2 Assign<br>[Running]      |
|                     |                                     |                                       | 5.19 Jog Accel Ramp                 | 6.13 DO3 Assign<br>[Zero Speed]   |
|                     |                                     |                                       | 5.20 Jog Decel Ramp                 | 6.14 DO4 Assign<br>[Flt or Alarm] |
|                     |                                     |                                       | 5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>[Sp < Lev1]     | 6.15 DO5 Assign<br>[Main Cont On] |
|                     |                                     |                                       | 5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel<br>[Const Zero] | 6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                     |                                       |                                     | 6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                     |                                       |                                     | 6.24 MSW Bit 13 Ass<br>[none]     |
|                     |                                     |                                       |                                     | 6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>[none]     |

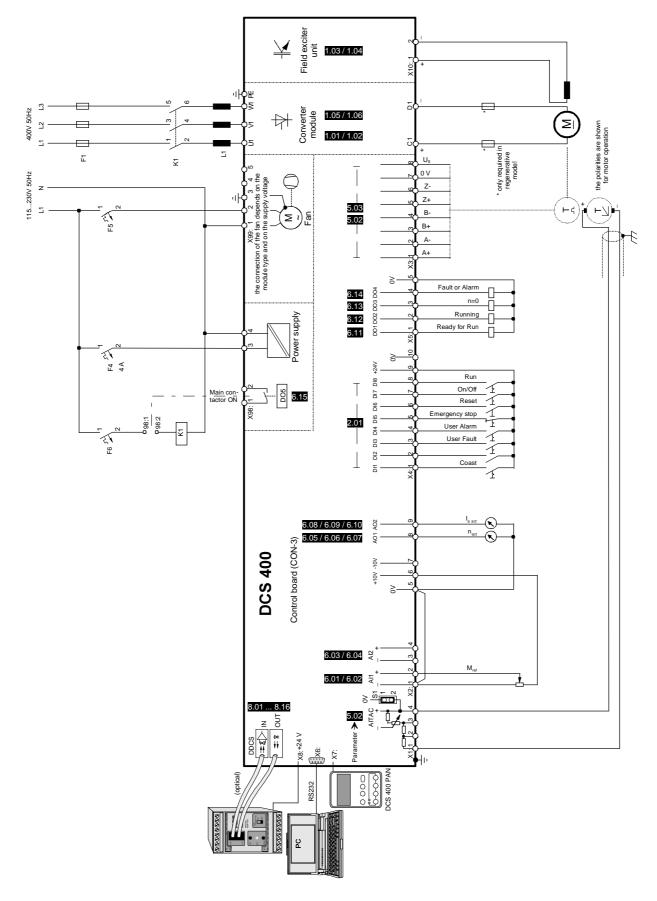


Fig. 4.2/8: Connection example application-Macro 8 - Torque Ctrl

II K 4-21

#### Digital inputs DI1...DI8

The drive is controlled via the digital inputs DI1...DI8. The significance of the inputs are defined by a macro. When you select a macro in the Macro Select (2.01) parameter the functions are assigned to the 8 digital inputs. The functions are described in the context of respective macros in section *4.2 Application Macros*. The functions of the digital inputs DI1...DI4 of macros 1, 5, 6, 7 and 8 are re-configurable via parameter group 9.

## Digital outputs DO1...DO5

Any signal of a signal list can be assigned to each digital output. The list is available in the parameters of the digital outputs DO1...DO5 (DO1 Assign (6.11)...DO5 Assign (6.15)). The significance and/or mode of operation of the signals is described there. The outputs are connected with the application macro by default i.e. changing the macro will change the significance of the outputs. The linking of the macro will be revoked if you allocate another signal. Then the output will keep its significance even if the setting of the macro changes.

#### Analog inputs Al1...Al2 (9 Bits + sign)

The analog inputs are 10V inputs. Offset voltages for 0% and 100% reference can be entered into the scaling parameters 6.01...6.04:

e.g.: A reference value is preset by means of a potentiometer. The zero position of the potentiometer is not exactly 0V but 0.8V and the full-scale deflection is not exactly 10V but 9.3 V. Enter 9.30 V into parameter Alx Scale 100 % (6.01 / 6.03) and 0.80V into parameter Alx Scale 0 % (6.02 / 6.04). The range between 0.80V and 9.30V is then considered to be the 100% reference value.

#### Analog outputs AO1...AO2 (7 Bits + sign)

Any actual value of an actual value list can be assigned to the analog outputs. The list is available in the AOx Assign parameters (6.05/6.08). The outputs are connected with the application macro by default i.e. changing the macro will change the significance of the outputs. The linking of the macro will be revoked if you allocate another actual value. Then the output will keep its new significance even if the setting of the macro changes.

Using the parameter AOx Mode (6.06/6.09) you can choose between unipolar (0...10V) or bipolar (-10V...0V...+10V) output.

The parameters AOx Scale 100 % (6.07 / 6.10) define which voltage level corresponds to 100% actual value.

E.g.: A 200% armature current is required in a drive. These 200% can be represented maximally by 10V. According to a simple formula:

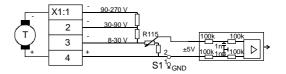
#### (10V / 200%) x 100%

AOx Scale shall be set to 5.00V (=100% armature current).

## Tachogenerator input (9 Bits + sign)

The speed feedback with tachogenerator is set with the parameter Speed Meas mode (5.02) = Tacho. The tachogenerator shall be connected to the appropriate inputs of the terminal block corresponding to its voltage level. The maximum tachogenerator voltage at maximum speed is decisive, e.g.:

| Tachogenerator selection:    | 60 V / 1000 rpm |
|------------------------------|-----------------|
| max. motor speed:            | 3000 rpm        |
| max. tachogenerator voltage: | 180V            |



The right connections for this tachogenerator are X1:1 and X1:4

Some applications may require that the voltage potential of the tachogenerator be connected to the 0V potential of the converter and/or not be connected. This setting is made with the jumper S1:1-2.

S1:1-2 jumpered: 0V connection between tachogenerator and converter

S1:1-2 open: no 0V connection

If a tachogenerator feedback is used the speed will require adjustment by means of potentiometer R115. The control panel or the PC tool support the adjustment during the prompted start-up.

Input voltage range of the A/D converter is  $\pm$ 5V. Scaling of speed actual signal is 4V = 100% speed.

#### Encoder inputs ChA+...ChZ-

Speed feedback with a encoder is set in the parameter Speed Meas Mode (5.02) = Encoder and the encoder increments per revolution are set with the parameter Encoder Inc (5.03). The supply voltage for the encoder can be taken from the converter by setting the jumper appropriately.

| Jumper setting | S2: 10-11 | +5V encoder supply  |
|----------------|-----------|---------------------|
|                | S2: 11-12 | +24V encoder supply |

Connecting the signal lines can be unsymmetrical (without inverted signals) to the terminals X3:1 and X3:3 or symmetrical (with inverted signals) to X3:1...X3:4. The Z signal (including the inverted signal) is not needed in the DCS400.

-+5/+24V

+5/+24V

-----+5/+24V

Jumper S2: unsymmetrical: S2 ChA+ X3:1 jumpered 120 <u>Ω</u> ChA -2 ChA-2-3 3 ChB-5-6 ChB+ (ChZ-8-9) 4 ChB -5 ChZ+ symmetrical: 6 ChZ jumpered 0V 7 ChA-1-2 +5V-0 0 0 +24V 8 ChB-4-5 Us (ChZ-7-8)

## DCS400 accuracy

Analog values will be converted to digital values via Anlog Digital Converter (ADC). The accuracy of resolution depends on how much bits are used and is related to 100%. Bipolar values are marked at most significant bit (sign bit).

Resolution of DCS400 inputs and outputs:

| Resolution      | esolution Steps Input / Output |                                 |        |  |  |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------|--|--|
| Drive controlle | ed by Serial                   | Communication                   |        |  |  |
| 15 Bit + sign   | ±20000                         | Speed reference/actual val.     | 0.005% |  |  |
|                 | ±4095                          | all other reference/actual val. | 0.025% |  |  |
| Drive controlle | ed by digital                  | /analogue I/O                   |        |  |  |
| 14 Bit + sign   | ±16383                         | Incremental Encoder             | 0.006% |  |  |
| 12 Bit + sign   | ±4095                          | Current / Torque                | 0.025% |  |  |
| 9 Bit + sign    | ±511                           | AI1, AI2                        | 0.2%   |  |  |
| 9 Bit + sign    | ±511                           | AITAC (10V=125%)                | 0.25%  |  |  |
| 7 Bit + sign    | ±127                           | AO1, AO2                        | 0.8%   |  |  |
| 9 Bit + sign    | ±511                           | AITAC (10V=125%)                | 0.25%  |  |  |

If serial communication is used all reference and actual values are representet in a 16 bit data word scaled between +32767 and -32768. For speed reference/actual values only  $\pm 20000$  are used, all other reference/actual values are scaled to  $\pm 4095$ .

If tacho feedback is used the nominal speed value is scaled to 80% of full resolution. A speed measurement up to 125% of nominal speed is possible. The accuracy is 0,25% related to nominal speed.

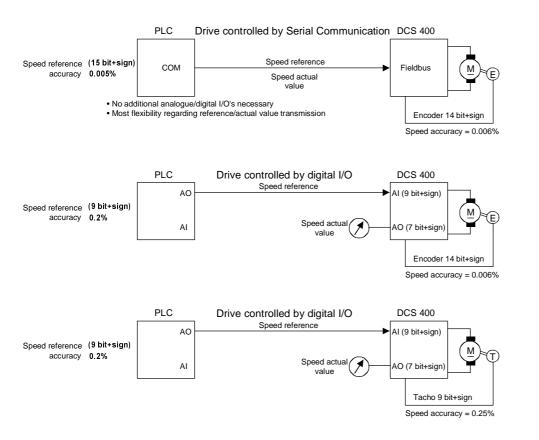


Fig. 4.3/1: Comparison regarding the accuracy between the different control modes

The drive logic controls the switching on and off of the converter and the motor and protects both in exceptional situations, in case of fault or emergency stop. This logic switches on the main contactor, the fans and the field supply. The drive logic uses rising/falling edges, i.e. it responds to 0-1 and 1-0 signal changes.

## Switching on and off

The main commands for switching the drive on and off are ON and RUN. The behaviour during switching on and off with the default setting is described below.

## Switching on

When the electronic supply has been switched on (or after a fault) the ON and the RUN command must be reset to "0" before logic will accept the switching on commands.

The rising edge of the ON command switches on the main contactor, the fans and the field supply and the converter synchronizes itself to the mains.

The rising edge of the RUN command (starting the drive) enables the ramp generator, the current and speed controller and the drive accelerates to the speed reference value on the ramp set with Accel Ramp (5.09).

The RUN command can be set simultaneously with the ON command.

## Switching off

The falling edge of the RUN command (stopping the drive) and Stop Mode (2.03) = Ramp brake the drive on the ramp set with Decel Ramp (5.10), until the actual speed has fallen below the speed set with Zero Speed Lev (5.15). Then the current and the speed controller will be blocked.

If Start Mode (2.09) = Flying Start is set and the RUN command is output again during stopping the drive will accelerate again, irrespective of the selected Stop Mode (2.03).

If Start Mode (2.09) = Flying Start is set and the drive is switched off with the ON command (RUN=1) only switching the drive on will require only the rising edge of the ON command. If the drive has not yet come to a standstill, the drive will accelerate from the actual speed.

The pulses are blocked with the falling edge of the ON command, 100 ms will pass, the main contactor, the fans and the field supply will be switched off and hence the drive will be disconnected from the mains. This command is also effective when the drive is running, braking or has already come to a standstill.

## Other behaviour during switching on and off

Switching off modes other than the default setting can be selected with Stop Mode (2.03):

If Stop Mode (2.03) = Torque Lim, the internal speed reference is set to 0 rpm and speed controller brakes the drive along the torque and/or current limit. This requires the balancing of the speed controller before braking. After the minimum speed has been reached the pulses are blocked, the main contactor, the fans and the field supply are switched off and thereby the drive is disconnected from the main.

Stop Mode (2.03) = Coast blocks the pulses and the drive is coasting without control.

If Start Mode (2.09) = Start from Zero is set and the RUN command is output again during stopping this command will be ineffective, i.e. the drive will not start again by itself after the minimum speed has been reached. Only if the RUN command is reset and set again during standstill the drive can be started again.

#### Switching off with emergency stop

In addition to ON or RUN the drive can be stopped with the Eme Stop command. The procedure is as follows with the default values:

The falling edge of the Eme Stop command generates the warning Eme Stop Pending (A09). At the same time the drive is braking on the ramp set with Eme Stop Ramp (5.11) until the actual speed has fallen below the speed set with Zero Speed Lev (5.15) (minimum speed). Current and speed controllers are blocked, the main contactor, the fans and the field supply are switched off and thereby the drive is disconnected from the mains.

Neither the ON nor the RUN command is effective in this phase. Only upon reaching the minimum speed, can the drive be restarted with the rising edge of the ON and the RUN command.

## Switching off behaviour at emergency stop

Eme Mode Stop (2.04) allows the selection of other switching off modes than those provided by the default setting.

If Eme Stop Mode (2.04) = Torque Lim is set the internal speed reference value is set to 0 rpm and the drive will brake along the torque or current limit via the speed controller. this requires the balancing of the speed controller before braking. The pulses are blocked, the main contactor, the fans and the field supply are switched off and thereby the drive is disconnected from the mains after the minimum speed has been reached.

Neither the ON nor the RUN command is active in this phase. Only upon reaching the minimum speed, can the drive be restarted with the rising edges of the ON and the RUN command.

If Eme Stop Mode (2.04) =Coast is set the pulses will be blocked, the main contactor, the fans and the field input will be switched off and thereby the drive will be disconnected from the mains. The drive is coasting without control.

Neither the ON nor the RUN command is effective in this phase. Only upon reaching the minimum speed, can the drive be restarted with the rising edges of the ON and the RUN command.

## **Special cases**

When the stop command (RUN = 0) is present the drive may change to the following events of higher priority which may occur: Comm Fault Mode (2.07) or Eme Stop Mode (2.04) with Eme Stop Mode being able to interrupt Comm Fault Mode.

While the drive is being stopped in accordance with Comm Fault Mode (2.07) or Eme Stop Mode (2.04), an Off command (ON = 0) is prevented and vice versa.

## Coasting via field bus communication

The coast bit (COAST) in the control word allows the drive to be de-energized as quickly as possible. The falling edge blocks the pulses, switches off the main contactor, the fans and the field supply and thereby disconnects the drive from the mains. The drive is coasting without control. The coast command (COAST) is executed internally with the highest priority and has the same effect as emergency stop if Eme Stop Mode (2.04) = Coast is set.

Neither the ON nor the RUN command is effective in this phase. Only upon reaching the minimum speed, can the drive be restarted with the rising edges of the ON and the RUN command. Software functions are described in the context of the individual parameters (see parameter list). Special functions which require an comprehensive parameterization or no parameterization and the service procedures are described below.

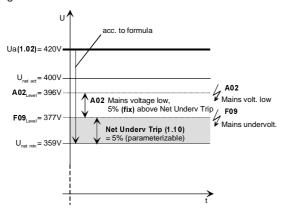
# 4.5.1 Monitoring the Mains Voltage and Auto Reclosing

## Monitoring the Mains Voltage

The DCS 400 power part can be connected to mains voltages from 230...500 V. No parameter setting is required for different mains voltages. The minimum tolerated mains voltage is derived from parameter Arm Volt Nom (1.02) [Ua]. If the actual mains voltage is lower than the calculated value fault message F09 is displayed and the drive trips. The minimum tolerated mains voltage is calculated using the following formulas:

 $\begin{array}{l} {U_{Mains}} \geq Ua \; / \; (1,35 \; x \; cos \; alpha) \\ cos \; alpha: \; & 4Q = 30^\circ = 0,866 \\ 2Q = 15^\circ = 0,966 \\ 4Q: \; {U_{Mains}} \geq Ua \; / \; (1,35 \; x \; 0,866) \\ 2Q: \; {U_{Mains}} \geq Ua \; / \; (1,35 \; x \; 0,966) \end{array}$ 

Using parameter Net Underv Trip (1.10) the trigger level for mains undervoltage detection can be increased. In this way the trigger level can be used as an additional safety distance to the minimum tolerated mains voltage as calculated following the formulas given above.



Example: Armature voltage (1.02) Main supply

= 420V (4-Q application) = 400V

| U <sub>net min</sub> | = 420V/(1,35x0,8             | 66) = 359 V (acc. to 4-Q-form.) |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| F09 <sub>Level</sub> | $= U_{\text{net min}} + 5\%$ | = 377V (5% = content of 1.10)   |
| A02                  | = F09 <sub>Level</sub> + 5%  | = 396V (5% = fix)               |

## **Auto Reclosing**

In parameter Net Fail Time (1.11) the maximum tolerated mains voltage failure time is set. In case of mains undervoltage the drive is blocked and alarm A02 is displayed during this time. If during this time the mains voltage returns to a voltage level higher than the trigger level the drive restarts automatically. After this time elapsed and the mains voltage did not return to a voltage level higher than the trigger level the drive stops operation and fault F09 is displayed. Auto Reclosing is not possible in this case.

Auto Reclosing is prevented if Net Fail Time = 0,0sec is set. In this case the drive will always stop operation with fault message F09 displayed if mains undervoltage occurs.

## 4.5.2 Monitoring the Actual Speed Value

The speed feedback via tacho-generator or encoder is monitored. If the deviation between the speed calculated from the EMF and the speed feedback is too big the drive will be switched off with a fault message **Speed Meas Fault (F16)**.

Fault conditions:

EMF Act > 50% nominal EMF **and** Tacho Speed Act < 12.5% Base Speed (1.05)

## 4.5.3 Automatic field weakening

#### Without speed-dependent current limiting

The field weakening mode is selected or not selected as a function of the parameter values Base Speed (1.05) and Max Speed (1.06):

no field weakening:

If the contents of Base Speed (1.05) **is identical** with Max Speed (1.06)

#### field weakening:

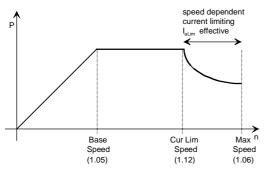
If the contents of Base Speed (1.05) **is smaller** than Max Speed (1.05)

In the case of manual parameterization and no field weakening set both parameters to identical values. With field weakening: set the Base Speed to the nominal speed at nominal armature voltage and Max Speed to the maximum speed at maximum field weakening. If you parameterize the converter with the prompted start-up procedure (Panel Wizard) the parameters will be interrogated during entry and will be set appropriately. Field weakening is possible only with a tacho-generator or encoder feedback. If the EMF feedback is used the motor can be run only up to the nominal speed Base Speed (1.05). Higher reference values will not cause any increase in speed, there will be no field weakening.

#### With speed-dependent current limiting

Beyond the normal field weakening range, the armature current of a motor must be reduced because of the commutation problems to be expected. This speed is the maximum electrical speed of a motor. Set the parameter Cur Lim Speed (1.12) to the speed, from which the limitation shall be effective, for this speed dependent current limiting. Within the speed range between Cur Lim Speed (1.12) and Max Speed (1.06) the permissible armature current Cur Arm Max (3.04) is reduced to  $la_{Lim}$  as a function of speed according to the following formula:





## 4.5.4 Overtemperature Protection

#### Converter:

DCS400 is equipped with an overtemperature protection on the heat sinks of the thyristors. When the maximum bridge temperature is reached DCS400 switches off with the fault message Converter Overtemp (F7). The converter can be switched on again only after sufficient cooling and acknowledgement of the fault. 5 °C below the cut-out temperature the warning Converter High Temp (A4) is output but the drive is not switched off.

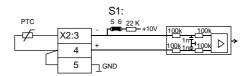
In case of overheating the Fan On signal will be active (fan coasting) until the converter has cooled down. The signal can be evaluated by means of the digital outputs DO1...DO5.

## Motor:

The temperature protection of the motor can be evaluated via a PTC element (usually in the field or commutating winding of the motor) in the DCS400. For this purpose the PTC element shall be connected to the AI2 analog input. The response of the DCS400 when the temperature monitor trips is set with the parameter PTC Mode (2.12).

The tripping of the temperature monitor of the motor has the same effect on the Fan ON signal as the converter temperature monitor: The signal remains present until the motor temperature has decreased sufficiently.

PTC connection diagramm:



#### 4.5.5 I<sup>2</sup>t function

The DCS400 is equiped with an  $l^2t$ -protection for the motor, which can be enabled if required. Parameter Arm Cur Nom (1.01) is the 100% value for the current. All current depending values are related to this parameter.

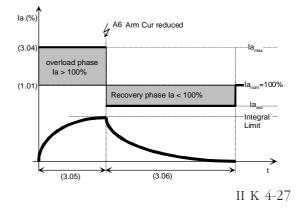
The l<sup>2</sup>t-function is enabled if the parameters Overload Time (3.05) and Recovery Time (3.06) are set to a value higher than 0 seconds and the overcurrent in parameter Arm Cur Max (3.04) is set to a value higher than the Arm Cur Nom (1.01).

The function is disabled if the parameter Overload Time (3.05) = 0s, or Recovery Time = 0s, or Arm Cur Max (3.04) = Arm Cur Nom (1.01).

If the recovery time is set to a value too low compared to the overload time, the alarm message Parameter Conflict (A16) "Recovery Time to low" is generated.

In addition to the overcurrent parameters the reference limititations Torque Lim Pos (3.07) and Torque Lim Neg (3.08) have to be set.

It has to be ensured that the parameterized overload times correspond to the overload capability of motor and drive. This has already to be taken into account during the selection process of the drive system.



The overload phase is set using parameters Arm Cur Max (3.04) and Overload Time (3.05). The recovery phase is set using parameter Recovery Time (3.06). In order not to overload the Motor, the l<sup>2</sup>t-plane of the two phases have to be identical:

overload phase = recovery phase  
- 
$$|a_{nom}^2\rangle$$
 x overload time =  $(|a_{nom}^2 - |a_{red}^2\rangle)$  x recovery time

In this case it is ensured that the mean value of the armature current does not exceed 100%. To calculate the recovery current the formula is rewritten:

$$Ia_{red} = \sqrt{Ia_{nom}^{2} - \frac{overload time}{recovery time} * (Ia_{max}^{2} - Ia_{nom}^{2})}$$

After the overload phase the armature current is automatically reduced / limited to la<sub>red</sub> during the recovery phase. The current reduction during the recovery phase is signaled using alarm message Armature Current reduced (A6). This message is also available at the digital outputs.

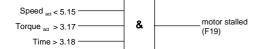
Shorter overload phases result in higher recovery currents.

## 4.5.6 Stall Protection

 $(la_{max}^{2})$ 

The stall protection of the motor can be activated with the Stall Time (3.18) parameter. If the value of this parameter is 0.0s the stall protection is switched off. A time >0.0s switches the stall protection on. The following conditions must be fulfilled to trip the monitor:

The actual speed value is smaller than the value in Zero Speed Lev (5.15) and the actual torque value is bigger than the value in Stall Torque (3.17) for a time longer than the value in Stall Time (3.18).



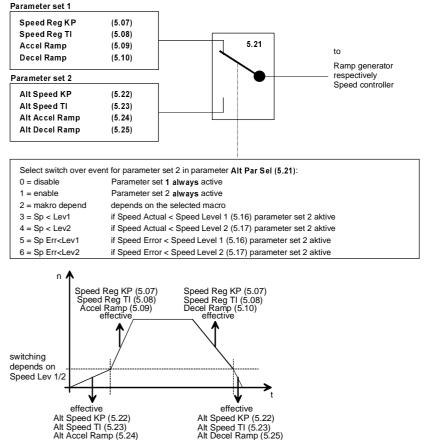
## 4.5.7 Flux Adaptation

The flux characteristic of the field is not linear to the increase in speed in the field weakening mode. Every field has a characteristic of its own within certain limits. This characteristic can be emulated by means of the parameters Field Cur 40 % (4.07), Field Cur 70% (4.08) and Field Cur 90% (4.09). The characteristic can be determined automatically by means of a service procedure in the parameter Contr Service (7.02).

In the case of manual parameterization, make sure that the parameter values are plausible i.e. the value in the parameter Field Cur 40 %(4.07) must be set to a value smaller than the value in Field Cur 70% (4.08), its value in turn must be smaller than the value in Field Cur 90% (4.09). Otherwise, the warning Parameter Conflict (A16) will be generated.

# 4.5.8 Alternative Parameters for the Speed Controller

A second parameter set is available for the speed controller (Alternative Parameters), which can be activated through events. The speed controller parameters KP and TI and the parameters for the accelerating and deccelerating ramps are switched over. Depending on the speed actual value or the speed deviation (difference between speed actual and speed reference) the behaviour of the speed controller can be influenced. In this way different behaviour during acceleration and decceleration can be parameterized easily.



**Hint:** If the motor drifts during standstill even if speed reference = 0 rpm the following settings are recommended:

| Alt Par Sel = Sp · | < Lev 1                        |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| Alt Accel Ramp     | = Accel Ramp (or required)     |
| Alt Decel Ramp     | = Decel Ramp (or required)     |
| Alt Speed KP       | = Speed Reg KP (or required)   |
| Alt Speed TI       | = 0 ms !                       |
| Speed Lev 1        | = Zero Speed Lev (or required) |
|                    |                                |

Through Alt Par Sel = Sp < Lev 1 the switch over to the second parameter set is triggered if the actual motor speed is smaller than the value set with Speed Level 1. After successful switch over the integral part of the speed controller is set to 0 with Alt Speed TI = 0 ms and the motor stops.

**Hint:** The DCS 400 has no gear protection. However, using the alternative parameters it is possible to reach a smooth rotation change over, if the alternativ parameters for KP and TI are set to appropriate values.

4.5.9 Service Procedures, Contr Service (7.02)

## Armature current controller

## Autotuning

- On the panel press button LOC; LOC is displayed in the panel status row.
- Select parameter Contr Service (7.02) = Arm Autotun and confirm with ENTER.
- Within the next 30 seconds press the (I) button on the panel. This starts the autotuning procedure.

The autotuning procedure is successfully finished if the panel displays the message **None**.

After successful autotuning the following controller parameters are set:

Arm Cur Reg KP (3.09) Current controller proportional gain Arm Cur Reg TI (3.10) Current controller integral time constant Cont Cur Lim (3.11) Continuous current limit Arm Inductance (3.12) Armature motor inductance Arm Resistance (3.13)

Armature motor resistance

If the autotuning procedure failed the alarm message **Autotuning Failed (A10)** is displayed. Detailed information for the failure reason can be read from parameter **Diagnosis (7.03)**. More explanations to the diagnosis messages are available in the chapter Troubleshooting.

Pressing the LOC button on the panel again the control is switched back to the input/output terminals. The LOC message in the panel status row disappears.

## Field current controller

## Autotuning

- On the panel press button LOC; LOC is displayed in the panel status row.
- Select parameter Contr Service (7.02) = Fld Autotun and confirm with ENTER.
- Within the next 30 seconds press the (I) button on the panel. This starts the autotuning procedure.

The autotuning procedure is successfully finished if the panel displays the message **None**.

After successful autotuning the following controller parameters are set: Field Cur KP (4.03) Field current controller proportional gain Field Cur TI (4.04)

Field current controller integral time constant EMF Reg KP (4.11)

EMF controller proportional gain EMF Reg TI (4.12)

EMF controller integral time constant

If the autotuning procedure failed the alarm message **Autotuning Failed (A10)** is displayed. Detailed information for the failure reason can be read from parameter **Diagnosis (7.03)**. More explanations to the diagnosis messages are available in the chapter Troubleshooting.

Pressing the LOC button on the panel again the control is switched back to the input/output terminals. The LOC message in the panel status row disappears.

## Manual Tuning

Preparation:

- Set Commis Ref 1 (7.15) = 0
- Commis Ref 2 (7.16) = 4096.
- Set Squarewave Per (7.17) = 5s.

The output of the Squarewave Generator (7.18) switches between 0 and 4096. 4096 corresponds to the set nominal field current (Field Cur Nom 1.03).

• Assign the actual current value (4.02) to analog output AO1 Ass (6.05) or AO2 Ass (6.06) and measure it or check the field current with a current probe.

Activate tuning:

- Set parameter Contr Service (7.02) = Fld Man.
- Switch on and enable the drive via the terminal block (ON=1, RUN=1) or switch on (I) the drive with operating panel in the LOCAL mode. The field current is flowing, but there is no armature current. The reference value of the field current is now following the output limited to 0 to 4096 of the Squarewave Generator (7.18).

Tuning:

 Now set the field current controller with the parameters Field Cur KP (4.03) and Field Cur TI (4.04). The procedure can aborted by setting the parameter Contr Services (7.02) = 0 or switching the drive off (ON=0, RUN=0). In this case, Contr Service (7.02) is reset automatically.

#### Speed controller

#### Autotuning

- On the panel press button LOC; LOC is displayed in the panel status row.
- Select parameter Contr Service (7.02) = Sp Autotun and confirm with ENTER.
- Within the next 30 seconds press the (I) button on the panel. This starts the autotuning procedure.

## Attention: Motor will accelerate twice to 80% of Base Speed

The autotuning procedure is successfully finished if the panel displays the message **None**.

After successful autotuning the following controller parameters are set:

Speed Reg KP (5.07) Speed controller proportional gain Speed Reg TI (5.08) Speed controller integral time constant

If the autotuning procedure failed the alarm message **Autotuning Failed (A10)** is displayed. Detailed information for the failure reason can be read from parameter **Diagnosis (7.03)**. More explanations to the diagnosis messages are available in the chapter Troubleshooting.

Pressing the LOC button on the panel again the control is switched back to the input/output terminals. The LOC message in the panel status row disappears.

#### Flux adaptation

## Autotuning

- On the panel press button LOC; LOC is displayed in the panel status row.
- Select parameter **Contr Service (7.02) = Flux Adapt** and confirm with ENTER.
- Within the next 30 seconds press the (I) button on the panel. This starts the autotuning procedure.

# Attention: Motor will accelerate to 50% of Base Speed

The autotuning procedure is successfully finished if the panel displays the message **None**.

After successful autotuning the following controller parameters are set:

Field Cur 40% (4.07) Field current for 40% flux Field Cur 70% (4.08) Field current for 70% flux Field Cur 90% (4.09) Field current for 90% flux

If the autotuning procedure failed the alarm message **Autotuning Failed (A10)** is displayed. Detailed information for the failure reason can be read from parameter **Diagnosis (7.03)**. More explanations to the diagnosis messages are available in the chapter Troubleshooting.

Pressing the LOC button on the panel again the control is switched back to the input/output terminals. The LOC message in the panel status row disappears.

## **Thyristor diagnosis**

#### Self diagnosis

- On the panel press button LOC; LOC is displayed in the panel status row.
- Select parameter Contr Service (7.02) = Thyr Diag and confirm with ENTER.
- Within the next 30 seconds press the (I) button on the panel. This starts the self-diagnosis procedure.

The thyristor diagnosis procedure is successfully finished if the panel displays the message **None**. That means no defective thyristor(s) were detected.

If the diagnosis procedure failed the fault message Hardware Fault (F02) is displayed. Detailed information for the failure reason can be read from parameter Diagnosis (7.03). More explanations to the diagnosis messages are available in the chapter Troubleshooting.

Pressing the LOC button on the panel again the control is switched back to the input/output terminals. The LOC message in the panel status row disappears.

## 4.5.10 Internal Scaling

You can display all parameters of the DCS400 in their physical quantities by means of operating panel or the PC tool, in the way they are specified in the column "Unit" at the parameter list:

A, V, rpm, Hz, %, s, ms, text, integer, mH, mOhm, %/ msec,  $^{\circ}C$ , kW, hex.

In case of serial drive control (**reference/actual value transmission**) with PLC (field bus coupling, RS232 port, panel port) the internal scaling of these values shall be considered. There is no transmission of physical quantities but values are transmitted in binary representation.

Example: The maximum speed reference of a drive of 3000 rpm is transmitted in a 16-bit telegram word. In this case 3000 rpm are equal to the maximum value of 20.000 decimal i.e. the resolution of the speed is in steps of 1/20,000. This value 20,000 is transmitted on the bus as a binary value in a 16-bit combination of "0" and "1". Each bit has a decimal valency. Hence 20,000 shall be distributed over these 16 bits in such a way that the decimal sum of set "1's" is again 20,000.

Representation of the decimal value 20,000 as 16-bit pattern

| line | 1 16    | 15    | 14   | 13   | 12   | 11   | 10  | 9   | 8   | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
|------|---------|-------|------|------|------|------|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|---|---|---|---|
| line | 2 32768 | 16384 | 8192 | 4096 | 2048 | 1024 | 512 | 256 | 128 | 64 | 32 | 16 | 8 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| line | 3 0     | 1     | 0    | 0    | 1    | 1    | 1   | 0   | 0   | 0  | 1  | 0  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Line 1 - positions of the 16 bits

Line 2 - decimal valency of each bit

Line 3 - bit combination of "0" and "1", whose checksum is 20,000

Other values of the DCS400 are resolved with a maximum value of 4096.

This internal scaling does not apply to the transmission of **parameters** via PLC. In this kind of transmission, decimal values are simply transmitted in binary form i.e. the values of the parameter list are represented in decimal form and without a decimal point in a 16bit word.

Decimal values without decimal point are transmitted in the same form as they are represented in the parameter list. In this case, e.g. the parameter Base Speed (1.05) will be set to 3000 if the nominal speed is intended to be 3000 rpm.

Decimal values with decimal point are simply transmitted as a number without decimal point but with all decimal digits. In this case, e.g. the parameter Field Cur Nom (1.03) will be set to 650 if the nominal field current is intended to be 6.50 A. Parameters with other engineering units shall be treated in the same way.

## **Exception:**

Selection parameters (unit: Text) have a number preceding the text in the parameter list. Every number represents a text and/or a function. Overwriting the number changes the selection in the parameter. If a such parameter is read the number will be transmitted, not the text.

## Incorrect parameter transmission

Writing parameters may cause the output of fault messages if

- the values are outside of the min. / max. definition (according to the parameter list)
- writing is on actual value parameters (signals) or constants
- writing is on parameters which are blocked during operation

In such cases, a fault telegram will be generated which must be evaluated in the PLC.

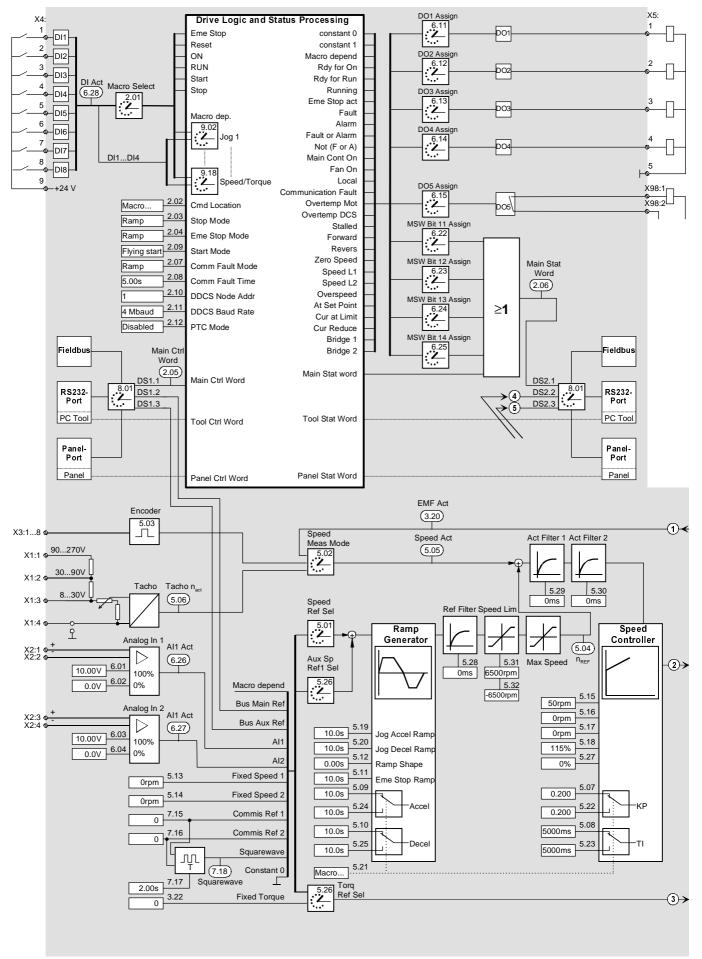
Table of internal scaling:

| Signal                                  | Internal value<br>(decimal) | Corresponds to value<br>(on operating panel or PC tool) |
|---|-----------------------------|---|
| Actual speed value (5.05)               | 20,000                      | 100% speed in rpm                                       |
| Speed reference value (5.04)            | 20,000                      | 100% speed in rpm.                                      |
| Armature voltage actual value (3.03)    | 4,096•(U <sub>a</sub> /EMF) | 100% nominal armature voltage in V                      |
| Armature current reference value (3.01) | 4,096                       | 100% nominal armature current in A                      |
| Armature current actual value (3.02)    | 4,096                       | 100% nominal armature current in A                      |
| Actual power value (3.21)               | 4,096                       | 100% power in %   |
| Actual torque value (3.23)              | 4,096                       | 100% torque in %  |
| Actual field current value (4.02)       | 4,096                       | 100% nominal field current in A                         |
| Actual EMF of motor (3.20)              | 4,096                       | 100% nominal EMF in V                                   |

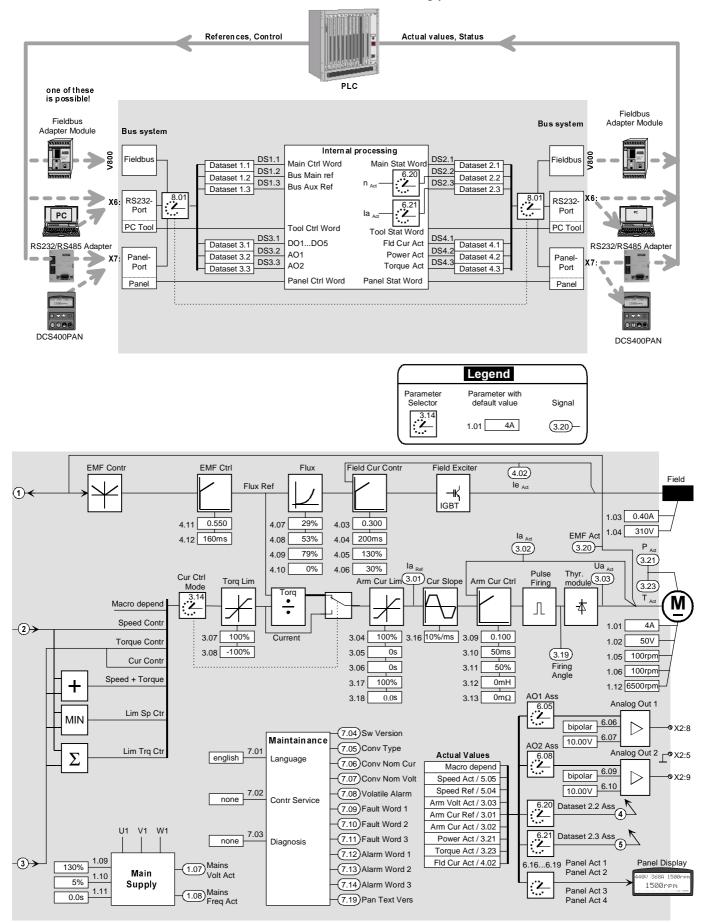
| Default in service procedure<br>Contr Service (7.02) | Internal value<br>(decimal) | Corresponds to value               |
|--|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Field current reference                              | 4,096                       | 100% of nominal field current in A |

## 4.6 Software Structure

## **Overview of Software**



## Overview of alternatve Drive Controlling possibilities



## Parameter overview

| 1 - Motor Settings  | 2 - Operation Mode  | 3 - Armature   | 4 - Field   | _   |
|---|---|--|---|---|
| 1.01 Arm Cur Nom *  | 2.01 Macro Select *   | 3.01 Arm Cur Ref   | 4.01 Field Cur Ref  | _   |
| .02 Arm Volt Nom *  | 2.02 Cmd Location   | 3.02 Arm Cur Act   | 4.02 Field Cur Act  |   |
| .03 Field Cur Nom *   | 2.03 Stop Mode *  | 3.03 Arm Volt Act  | 4.03 Field Cur KP   | _   |
| .04 Field Volt Nom *  | 2.04 Eme Stop Mode *  | 3.04 Arm Cur Max *   | 4.04 Field Cur TI   |   |
| .05 Base Speed *  | 2.05 Main Ctrl Word   | 3.05 Overload Time   | 4.05 Fld Ov Cur Trip  |   |
| .06 Max Speed *   | 2.06 Main Stat Word   | 3.06 Recovery Time   | 4.06 Field Low Trip   |   |
| .07 Mains Volt Act  | 2.07 Comm Fault Mode  | 3.07 Torque Lim Pos *  | 4.07 Field Cur 40%  |   |
| .08 Mains Freq Act  | 2.08 Comm Fault Time  | 3.08 Torque Lim Neg *  | 4.08 Field Cur 70%  |   |
| .09 Arm Overv Trip  | 2.09 Start Mode   | 3.09 Arm Cur Reg KP  | 4.09 Field Cur 90%  |   |
| .10 Net Underv Trip   | 2.10 DDCS Node Addr   | 3.10 Arm Cur Reg TI  | 4.10 Field Heat Ref   |   |
| .11 Net Fail Time   | 2.11 DDCS Baud Rate   | 3.11 Cont Cur Lim  | 4.11 EMF KP   |   |
| 1.12 Cur Lim Speed  | 2.12 PTC Mode   | 3.12 Arm Inductance  | 4.12 EMF TI   |   |
|   | 2.13 Fan Delay  | 3.13 Arm Resistance  |   |   |
|   |   | 3.14 Cur Contr Mode  |   |   |
|   |   | 3.15 Torque Ref Sel  |   |   |
|   |   | 3.16 Cur Slope   |   |   |
|   |   | 3.17 Stall Torque *  |   |   |
|   |   | 3.18 Stall Time *  |   |   |
|   |   |  |   |   |
|   |   | 3.19 Firing Angle  |   | -   |
|   |   | 3.20 EMF Act   |   | -   |
|   |   | 3.21 Power Act   |   | -   |
|   |   | 3.22 Fixed Torque  |   | _   |
|   |   | 3.23 Torque Act  |   | -   |
|   |   | 3.24 Cur Lim 2 Inv   |   | _   |
|   |   |  |   | _   |
|   | -   |  |   |   |
|   |   |  |   | _   |
|   |   |  |   |   |
| 5 On and On standing  | 6 Innet/Output  | 7 Maintenana   | 0 5-1-1-1   | O Maana Aslandadia  |
| 5 - Speed Controller  | 6 - Input/Output  | 7 - Maintenance  | 8 - Fieldbus  | 9 - Macro Adaptatio   |
| 5.01 Speed Ref Sel  | 6.01 Al1 Scale 100%   | 7.01 Language *  | 8.01 Fieldbus Par 1   | 9.01 MacParGrpAction  |
| 5.02 Speed Meas Mode *  | 6.02 Al1 Scale 0%   | 7.02 Contr Service   | 8.02 Fieldbus Par 2   | 9.02 Jog 1  |
| 5.03 Encoder Inc *  | 6.03 Al2 Scale 100%   | 7.03 Diagnosis   | 8.03 Fieldbus Par 3   | 9.03 Jog 2  |
| 5.04 Speed Ref  | 6.04 AI2 Scale 0%   | 7.04 SW Version  | 8.04 Fieldbus Par 4   |   |
|   |   |  | -   | 9.04 COAST  |
| 5.05 Speed Act  | 6.05 AO1 Assign *   | 7.05 Conv Type   | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 5   | 9.05 User Fault   |
|   |   | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur  | -   |   |
| 5.05 Speed Act<br>5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP   | 6.05 AO1 Assign *   |  | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 5   | 9.05 User Fault   |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP   | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *  | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur  | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 5<br>8.06 Fieldbus Par 6  | 9.05 User Fault<br>9.06 User Fault Inv  |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act  | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *   | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt  | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 7   | 9.05 User Fault<br>9.06 User Fault Inv<br>9.07 User Alarm   |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act           5.07 Speed Reg KP           5.08 Speed Reg TI           5.09 Accel Ramp *  | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *  | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm   | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 5<br>8.06 Fieldbus Par 6<br>8.07 Fieldbus Par 7<br>8.08 Fieldbus Par 8  | 9.05 User Fault<br>9.06 User Fault Inv<br>9.07 User Alarm<br>9.08 User Alarm Inv  |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act           5.07 Speed Reg KP           5.08 Speed Reg TI           5.09 Accel Ramp *           5.10 Decel Ramp *  | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *  | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1  | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 5<br>8.06 Fieldbus Par 6<br>8.07 Fieldbus Par 7<br>8.08 Fieldbus Par 8<br>8.09 Fieldbus Par 9   | 9.05 User Fault<br>9.06 User Fault Inv<br>9.07 User Alarm<br>9.08 User Alarm Inv<br>9.09 Dir of Rotation  |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act           5.07 Speed Reg KP           5.08 Speed Reg TI           5.09 Accel Ramp *           5.10 Decel Ramp *           5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *   | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *   | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3  | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 5<br>8.06 Fieldbus Par 6<br>8.07 Fieldbus Par 7<br>8.08 Fieldbus Par 8<br>8.09 Fieldbus Par 9<br>8.10 Fieldbus Par 10<br>8.11 Fieldbus Par 11   | 9.05 User Fault<br>9.06 User Fault Inv<br>9.07 User Alarm<br>9.08 User Alarm Inv<br>9.09 Dir of Rotation<br>9.10 MotPot Incr<br>9.11 MotPot Decr  |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act           5.07 Speed Reg KP           5.08 Speed Reg TI           5.09 Accel Ramp *           5.10 Decel Ramp *           5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *           5.12 Ramp Shape   | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *  | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1   | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 12   | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed  |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act           5.07 Speed Reg KP           5.08 Speed Reg TI           5.09 Accel Ramp *           5.10 Decel Ramp *           5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *           5.12 Ramp Shape           5.13 Fixed Speed 1  | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *   | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2  | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 13   | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev   |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act           5.07 Speed Reg KP           5.08 Speed Reg TI           5.09 Accel Ramp *           5.10 Decel Ramp *           5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *           5.12 Ramp Shape           5.13 Fixed Speed 1           5.14 Fixed Speed 2   | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *  | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3   | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 14                     | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam  |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act           5.07 Speed Reg KP           5.08 Speed Reg TI           5.09 Accel Ramp *           5.10 Decel Ramp *           5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *           5.12 Ramp Shape           5.13 Fixed Speed 1           5.14 Fixed Speed 2           5.15 Zero Speed Lev *   | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *   | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1  | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault<br>9.06 User Fault Inv<br>9.07 User Alarm<br>9.08 User Alarm Inv<br>9.09 Dir of Rotation<br>9.10 MotPot Incr<br>9.11 MotPot Decr<br>9.12 MotPotMinSpeed<br>9.13 Ext Field Rev<br>9.14 AlternativParam<br>9.15 Ext Speed Lim   |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act           5.07 Speed Reg KP           5.08 Speed Reg TI           5.09 Accel Ramp *           5.10 Decel Ramp *           5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *           5.12 Ramp Shape           5.13 Fixed Speed 1           5.14 Fixed Speed 2           5.15 Zero Speed Lev *           5.16 Speed Level 1 *  | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1   | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2   | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 14                     | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.16 Add AuxSpRef   |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act           5.07 Speed Reg KP           5.08 Speed Reg TI           5.09 Accel Ramp *           5.10 Decel Ramp *           5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *           5.12 Ramp Shape           5.13 Fixed Speed 1           5.14 Fixed Speed 2           5.15 Zero Speed Lev *           5.16 Speed Level 1 *           5.17 Speed Level 2 *   | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2   | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per  | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP<br>5.08 Speed Reg TI<br>5.09 Accel Ramp *<br>5.10 Decel Ramp *<br>5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *<br>5.12 Ramp Shape<br>5.13 Fixed Speed 1<br>5.14 Fixed Speed 2<br>5.15 Zero Speed Lev *<br>5.16 Speed Level 1 *<br>5.17 Speed Level 2 *<br>5.18 Overspeed Trip   | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3   | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act                       | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.16 Add AuxSpRef   |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP<br>5.08 Speed Reg TI<br>5.09 Accel Ramp *<br>5.10 Decel Ramp *<br>5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *<br>5.12 Ramp Shape<br>5.13 Fixed Speed 1<br>5.14 Fixed Speed 2<br>5.15 Zero Speed Lev *<br>5.16 Speed Level 1 *<br>5.17 Speed Level 2 *<br>5.18 Overspeed Trip<br>5.19 Jog Accel Ramp  | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3<br>6.19 Panel Act 4   | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act<br>7.19 Pan Text Vers | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |
| 0.06 Tacho Speed Act         0.07 Speed Reg KP         0.08 Speed Reg TI         0.09 Accel Ramp *         0.10 Decel Ramp *         0.11 Eme Stop Ramp *         0.12 Ramp Shape         0.13 Fixed Speed 1         0.14 Fixed Speed 2         0.15 Zero Speed Lev *         0.16 Speed Level 1 *         0.17 Speed Level 2 *         0.18 Overspeed Trip         0.19 Jog Accel Ramp   | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3<br>6.19 Panel Act 4<br>6.20 Dataset 2.2 Ass   | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act                       | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP<br>5.08 Speed Reg TI<br>5.09 Accel Ramp *<br>5.10 Decel Ramp *<br>5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *<br>5.12 Ramp Shape<br>5.13 Fixed Speed 1<br>5.14 Fixed Speed 2<br>5.15 Zero Speed Lev *<br>5.16 Speed Level 1 *<br>5.17 Speed Level 2 *<br>5.18 Overspeed Trip<br>5.19 Jog Accel Ramp<br>5.20 Jog Decel Ramp<br>5.21 Alt Par Sel   | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3<br>6.19 Panel Act 4<br>6.20 Dataset 2.2 Ass<br>6.21 Dataset 2.3 Ass   | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act<br>7.19 Pan Text Vers | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP<br>5.08 Speed Reg TI<br>5.09 Accel Ramp *<br>5.10 Decel Ramp *<br>5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *<br>5.12 Ramp Shape<br>5.13 Fixed Speed 1<br>5.14 Fixed Speed 2<br>5.15 Zero Speed Lev *<br>5.16 Speed Level 1 *<br>5.17 Speed Level 2 *<br>5.18 Overspeed Trip<br>5.19 Jog Accel Ramp<br>5.20 Jog Decel Ramp<br>5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>5.22 Alt Speed KP  | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3<br>6.19 Panel Act 3<br>6.19 Panel Act 4<br>6.20 Dataset 2.2 Ass<br>6.21 Dataset 2.3 Ass<br>6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass  | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act<br>7.19 Pan Text Vers | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP<br>5.08 Speed Reg TI<br>5.09 Accel Ramp *<br>5.10 Decel Ramp *<br>5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *<br>5.12 Ramp Shape<br>5.13 Fixed Speed 1<br>5.14 Fixed Speed 2<br>5.15 Zero Speed Lev *<br>5.16 Speed Level 1 *<br>5.17 Speed Level 2 *<br>5.18 Overspeed Trip<br>5.19 Jog Accel Ramp<br>5.20 Jog Decel Ramp<br>5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>5.22 Alt Speed KP<br>5.23 Alt Speed TI   | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 1<br>6.19 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3<br>6.19 Panel Act 4<br>6.20 Dataset 2.2 Ass<br>6.21 Dataset 2.3 Ass<br>6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass  | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act<br>7.19 Pan Text Vers | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP<br>5.08 Speed Reg TI<br>5.09 Accel Ramp *<br>5.10 Decel Ramp *<br>5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *<br>5.12 Ramp Shape<br>5.13 Fixed Speed 1<br>5.14 Fixed Speed 2<br>5.15 Zero Speed Lev *<br>5.16 Speed Level 1 *<br>5.17 Speed Level 2 *<br>5.18 Overspeed Trip<br>5.19 Jog Accel Ramp<br>5.20 Jog Decel Ramp<br>5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>5.22 Alt Speed KP<br>5.23 Alt Speed TI<br>5.24 Alt Accel Ramp  | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3<br>6.20 Dataset 2.2 Ass<br>6.21 Dataset 2.3 Ass<br>6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>6.24 MSW Bit 13 Ass   | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act<br>7.19 Pan Text Vers | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP<br>5.08 Speed Reg TI<br>5.09 Accel Ramp *<br>5.10 Decel Ramp *<br>5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *<br>5.12 Ramp Shape<br>5.13 Fixed Speed 1<br>5.14 Fixed Speed 2<br>5.15 Zero Speed Lev *<br>5.16 Speed Level 1 *<br>5.17 Speed Level 2 *<br>5.18 Overspeed Trip<br>5.19 Jog Accel Ramp<br>5.20 Jog Decel Ramp<br>5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>5.22 Alt Speed KP<br>5.23 Alt Speed TI<br>5.24 Alt Accel Ramp<br>5.25 Alt Decel Ramp   | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3<br>6.19 Panel Act 3<br>6.20 Dataset 2.2 Ass<br>6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass<br>6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass  | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act<br>7.19 Pan Text Vers | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP<br>5.08 Speed Reg TI<br>5.09 Accel Ramp *<br>5.10 Decel Ramp *<br>5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *<br>5.12 Ramp Shape<br>5.13 Fixed Speed 1<br>5.14 Fixed Speed 2<br>5.15 Zero Speed Lev *<br>5.16 Speed Level 1 *<br>5.17 Speed Level 2 *<br>5.18 Overspeed Trip<br>5.20 Jog Decel Ramp<br>5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>5.22 Alt Speed KP<br>5.23 Alt Speed TI<br>5.24 Alt Accel Ramp<br>5.25 Alt Decel Ramp<br>5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel   | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3<br>6.19 Panel Act 3<br>6.20 Dataset 2.2 Ass<br>6.21 Dataset 2.3 Ass<br>6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass<br>6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>6.26 Al1 Act | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act<br>7.19 Pan Text Vers | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP<br>5.08 Speed Reg TI<br>5.09 Accel Ramp *<br>5.10 Decel Ramp *<br>5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *<br>5.12 Ramp Shape<br>5.13 Fixed Speed 1<br>5.14 Fixed Speed 2<br>5.15 Zero Speed Lev *<br>5.16 Speed Level 1 *<br>5.17 Speed Level 2 *<br>5.18 Overspeed Trip<br>5.20 Jog Decel Ramp<br>5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>5.22 Alt Speed KP<br>5.23 Alt Speed TI<br>5.24 Alt Accel Ramp<br>5.25 Alt Decel Ramp<br>5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel<br>5.27 Drooping  | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3<br>6.19 Panel Act 3<br>6.20 Dataset 2.2 Ass<br>6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass<br>6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass  | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act<br>7.19 Pan Text Vers | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP<br>5.08 Speed Reg TI<br>5.09 Accel Ramp *<br>5.10 Decel Ramp *<br>5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *<br>5.12 Ramp Shape<br>5.13 Fixed Speed 1<br>5.14 Fixed Speed 2<br>5.15 Zero Speed Lev *<br>5.16 Speed Level 1 *<br>5.17 Speed Level 2 *<br>5.18 Overspeed Trip<br>5.20 Jog Decel Ramp<br>5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>5.22 Alt Speed KP<br>5.23 Alt Speed TI<br>5.24 Alt Accel Ramp<br>5.25 Alt Decel Ramp<br>5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel<br>5.27 Drooping  | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3<br>6.19 Panel Act 3<br>6.20 Dataset 2.2 Ass<br>6.21 Dataset 2.3 Ass<br>6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass<br>6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>6.26 Al1 Act | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act<br>7.19 Pan Text Vers | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act           5.07 Speed Reg KP           5.08 Speed Reg TI           5.09 Accel Ramp *           5.10 Decel Ramp *  | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3<br>6.19 Panel Act 4<br>6.20 Dataset 2.2 Ass<br>6.21 Dataset 2.3 Ass<br>6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass<br>6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>6.26 Al1 Act | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act<br>7.19 Pan Text Vers | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP<br>5.08 Speed Reg TI<br>5.09 Accel Ramp *<br>5.10 Decel Ramp *<br>5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *<br>5.12 Ramp Shape<br>5.13 Fixed Speed 1<br>5.14 Fixed Speed 2<br>5.15 Zero Speed Lev *<br>5.16 Speed Level 1 *<br>5.17 Speed Level 2 *<br>5.18 Overspeed Trip<br>5.19 Jog Accel Ramp<br>5.20 Jog Decel Ramp<br>5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>5.22 Alt Speed KP<br>5.23 Alt Speed TI<br>5.24 Alt Accel Ramp<br>5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel<br>5.27 Drooping<br>5.28 Ref Filt Time<br>5.30 Act Filt 2 Time                                | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3<br>6.19 Panel Act 4<br>6.20 Dataset 2.2 Ass<br>6.21 Dataset 2.3 Ass<br>6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass<br>6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>6.26 Al1 Act | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act<br>7.19 Pan Text Vers | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP<br>5.08 Speed Reg TI<br>5.09 Accel Ramp *<br>5.10 Decel Ramp *<br>5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *<br>5.12 Ramp Shape<br>5.13 Fixed Speed 1<br>5.14 Fixed Speed 2<br>5.15 Zero Speed Lev *<br>5.16 Speed Level 1 *<br>5.17 Speed Level 2 *<br>5.18 Overspeed Trip<br>5.19 Jog Accel Ramp<br>5.20 Jog Decel Ramp<br>5.21 Alt Par Sel<br>5.22 Alt Speed KP<br>5.23 Alt Speed TI<br>5.24 Alt Accel Ramp<br>5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel<br>5.27 Drooping<br>5.28 Ref Filt Time<br>5.30 Act Filt 2 Time                                | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3<br>6.19 Panel Act 4<br>6.20 Dataset 2.2 Ass<br>6.21 Dataset 2.3 Ass<br>6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass<br>6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>6.26 Al1 Act | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act<br>7.19 Pan Text Vers | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |
| 5.06 Tacho Speed Act<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP<br>5.08 Speed Reg TI<br>5.09 Accel Ramp *<br>5.10 Decel Ramp *<br>5.11 Eme Stop Ramp *<br>5.12 Ramp Shape<br>5.13 Fixed Speed 1<br>5.14 Fixed Speed 2<br>5.15 Zero Speed Level 2<br>5.15 Zero Speed Level 1 *<br>5.16 Speed Level 1 *<br>5.17 Speed Level 2 *<br>5.18 Overspeed Trip<br>5.20 Jog Decel Ramp<br>5.21 Alt Speed KP<br>5.22 Alt Speed KP<br>5.23 Alt Speed TI<br>5.24 Alt Accel Ramp<br>5.25 Alt Decel Ramp<br>5.25 Alt Decel Ramp<br>5.26 Aux Sp Ref Sel<br>5.27 Drooping<br>5.28 Ref Filt Time | 6.05 AO1 Assign *<br>6.06 AO1 Mode *<br>6.07 AO1 Scale 100% *<br>6.08 AO2 Assign *<br>6.09 AO2 Mode *<br>6.10 AO2 Scale 100% *<br>6.11 DO1 Assign *<br>6.12 DO2 Assign *<br>6.13 DO3 Assign *<br>6.14 DO4 Assign *<br>6.15 DO5 Assign *<br>6.16 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 1<br>6.17 Panel Act 2<br>6.18 Panel Act 3<br>6.19 Panel Act 4<br>6.20 Dataset 2.2 Ass<br>6.21 Dataset 2.3 Ass<br>6.22 MSW Bit 11 Ass<br>6.23 MSW Bit 12 Ass<br>6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>6.25 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>6.26 Al1 Act | 7.06 Conv Nom Cur<br>7.07 Conv Nom Volt<br>7.08 Volatile Alarm<br>7.09 Fault Word 1<br>7.10 Fault Word 2<br>7.11 Fault Word 3<br>7.12 Alarm Word 1<br>7.13 Alarm Word 2<br>7.14 Alarm Word 3<br>7.15 Commis Ref 1<br>7.16 Commis Ref 2<br>7.17 Squarewave Per<br>7.18 Squarewave Act<br>7.19 Pan Text Vers | 8.05 Fieldbus Par 58.06 Fieldbus Par 68.07 Fieldbus Par 78.08 Fieldbus Par 88.09 Fieldbus Par 98.10 Fieldbus Par 108.11 Fieldbus Par 118.12 Fieldbus Par 128.13 Fieldbus Par 138.14 Fieldbus Par 148.15 Fieldbus Par 15 | 9.05 User Fault         9.06 User Fault Inv         9.07 User Alarm         9.08 User Alarm Inv         9.09 Dir of Rotation         9.10 MotPot Incr         9.11 MotPot Decr         9.12 MotPotMinSpeed         9.13 Ext Field Rev         9.14 AlternativParam         9.15 Ext Speed Lim         9.17 Curr Lim 2 Inv |

 normal
 Parameter, constantly available

 Grey shaded
 hidden Parameters and Signals (actual values)

 Bold
 Signals (actual values)

 underlined
 by Autotuning influenced parameters

 \*
 by Start-up wizard influenced parameters (Panel & PC)

II K 4-34

| ParNo.  | Parameter name and significance   | Min  | Max   | Default | Unit | (1) | custom<br>setting |
|---------|---|------|-------|---------|------|-----|-------------------|
| Grp 1   | Motor Settings  |      |       |         |      |     | setting           |
| 1.01    | Arm Cur Nom   | 4    | 820   | 4       | А    | x   |                   |
| Wizard  | Nominal motor current in amperes  | '    | 020   |         | ~    | Â   |                   |
| 1112ana | (indicated on the motor's rating plate).  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
| 1.02    | Arm Volt Nom  | 50   | 700   | 50      | V    | х   |                   |
| Wizard  | Nominal motor voltage in volts  |      | 1.00  | 00      |      | ~   |                   |
| 1112ana | (indicated on the motor's rating plate).  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
| 1.03    | Field Cur Nom   | 0.10 | 16.00 | 0.40    | Α    | х   |                   |
| Wizard  | Nominal field current in amperes  |      |       | 00      |      | ~   |                   |
|         | (indicated on the motor's rating plate).  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
| 1.04    | Field Volt Nom  | 50   | 350   | 310     | V    | x   |                   |
| Wizard  | Nominal field voltage in volts  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | (indicated on the motor's rating plate).  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
| 1.05    | Base Speed  | 100  | 6500  | 100     | rpm  | x   |                   |
| Wizard  | Nominal motor speed in revolutions/minute   |      |       |         | · ·  |     |                   |
|         | (indicated on the motor's rating plate).  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | Base Speed = Max Speed = <b>no</b> Fieldweakening   |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | Base Speed < Max Speed = Fieldweakening   |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | Base Speed > Max Speed = <b>Speed Limitation</b>  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
| 1.06    | Max Speed   | 100  | 6500  | 100     | rpm  | х   |                   |
| Wizard  | Maximum motor speed in revolutions/minute   |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | (indicated on the motor's rating plate).  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | Base Speed = Max Speed = <b>no</b> Fieldweakening   |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | Base Speed < Max Speed = Fieldweakening   |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | Base Speed > Max Speed = Speed Limitation   |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
| 1.07    | Mains Volt Act  | -    | -     | -       | V    |     |                   |
| Signal  | Measured mains voltage in volts.  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
| 1.08    | Mains Freq Act  | -    | -     | -       | Hz   |     |                   |
| Signal  | Measured mains frequency in hertz.  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | Long Parameter Menu   |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
| 1.09    | Arm Overv Trip  | 20   | 150   | 130     | %    |     |                   |
|         | Motor overvoltage tripping limit in % related to the  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | nominal motor voltage (1.02)  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
| 1.10    | Net Underv Trip   | 0    | 50    | 5       | %    |     |                   |
|         | Depending on the nominal motor voltage (1.02) is  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | calculated the smallest allowable mains voltage.  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | With this parameter, an additional security-spacing,  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | with reference to the smallest mains voltage, is determined.                                |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | The smallest mains voltage amount is  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | $U_{\text{mains}} \ge \text{Ua} / (1,35 \text{ x cos alpha})$                               |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | $O_{\text{mains}} \ge Oa 7 (1,35 \times COS alpha)$<br>cos alpha: $4Q = 30^{\circ} = 0,866$ |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | $2Q = 15^\circ = 0,966$   |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | $4Q: U_{mains} \ge Ua / (1,35 \times 0,866)$  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | $2Q: U_{mains} \ge Ua / (1,35 \times 0,966)$  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
| 1.11    | <b>Net Fail Time</b>  | 0.0  | 10.0  | 0.0     | s    | x   |                   |
| 1.11    | During this time the supply voltage must return to a  | 0.0  | 10.0  | 0.0     | 3    | ~   |                   |
|         | value higher than Net Underv Trip (1.10). Otherwise   |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | an undervoltage trip will be generated.   |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | 0 = restart prevented. In case of mains under-  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | voltage the drive will switch off with a fault  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | message.  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | >0 = automatic restart of the drive if the mains  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | voltage recovers within the set time.   |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | $(U_{\text{line}}$ result of ( <b>1.10</b> ))   |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | (-iine) ( 7)  |      |       |         |      |     |                   |
|         | an na na saible if the shrine is in ON status   |      |       |         |      |     |                   |

| ParNo. | Parameter name and significance  | Min | Max  | Default | Unit | (1) | custom<br>setting |
|--------|--|-----|------|---------|------|-----|-------------------|
| Grp 1  | Motor Settings (continued)   |     |      |         |      |     |                   |
| 1.12   | Cur Lim Speed<br>Speed-dependent current limitation. From this<br>speed value onward, the armature current will be<br>reduced to a proportional basis of 1/n.<br>Cur Lim Speed > Max Speed = no speed depend<br>current limit.<br>Cur Lim Speed < Max Speed = speed depend<br>current limitation | 100 | 6500 | 6500    | rpm  | x   |                   |

| ParNo.         | Parameter name and significance  | Min | Max | Default | Unit  | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|----------------|--|-----|-----|---------|-------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 2          | Operation Mode   |     |     |         |       |     | 0                  |
| 2.01           | Macro Select   | 0   | 7   | 0       | Text  | х   |                    |
| Wizard         | Selection of desired macro:  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | 0 = Standard   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | 1 = Man/Const Sp   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | 2 = Hand/Auto  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | 3 = Hand/MotPot  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | 4 = Jogging  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | 5 = Motor Pot  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | 6 = ext FieldRev   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
| 0.00           | 7 = Torque Cntrl   | 0   | 2   | 0       | Tout  |     |                    |
| 2.02           | Cmd Location   | 0   | 2   | 0       | Text  | X   |                    |
|                | Selection of the desired command location. The   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | command location which has been set controls the   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | drive ( <b>ON</b> / <b>RUN</b> ). <b>Emergency stop</b> and <b>reset</b> from the <b>terminal block</b> are <b>also</b> effective in the case of |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | bus control.   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | 0 = macro depend   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | command location is depend on the selected   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | macro  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | 1 = Terminals  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | command location is Terminal X4:18   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | 2 = Bus  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | command location is a PLC, connected to the  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | Panel-Port or RS232-Port or Fieldbus Adapter   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | 3 = Key  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | Automatic switch over between Bus (2) and  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | Terminals (1). Standard command location is  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | Bus. In case of communication faults the   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | command location switches over from Bus to   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | Terminals. In this case it is possible to control the  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | drive via ON and RUN commands from   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | Terminals. The commands could be connected   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | to a key switch. When the switch will be closed  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | the drive starts and accelerate to a speed   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | defined in parameter Fixed Speed (5.13)  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | (provided that Speed Ref Sel (5.01) has been set   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | to Bus Main Ref). When the switch will be  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | opened the command location switches back to   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
| 2.03           | Bus only in case of no communication faults.<br>Stop Mode  | 0   | 2   | 0       | Text  |     |                    |
| 2.03<br>Wizard | Selection of the desired operating response to a   | 0   | 2   |         | I GYL | X   |                    |
| vvizaru        | stop command (controller blocking):  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | 0 = Ramp   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | Motor is decelerated in acc. with a ramp (5.10)  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | 1 = Torque Lim   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | Motor is decelerated in accordance with the  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | torque limit   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | 2 = Coast  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | Motor coasts to zero speed   |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | Response time of deceleration by Ramp or Torque  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |
|                | depends on optimization of speed regulator.  |     |     |         |       |     |                    |

| Grp 2         Operation Mode (continued)         Image: Continued of the second   | ParNo. | Parameter name and significance                        | Min | Max | Default | Unit | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|--|--------|--|-----|-----|---------|------|-----|--------------------|
| Mizard Selection of the desired operating response to an<br>emergency stop command:<br>0 = Ramp<br>Motor is decelerated in acc. with a ramp (5.11)<br>1 = Torque Lim<br>Motor is decelerated in accordance with the<br>torque limit<br>2 = Coast<br>Methor coasts to zero speed<br>Response time of deceleration by Ramp or Torque<br>depends on optimization of speed regulator.<br>2.05<br>Main Ctrl Word<br>The Main Ctrl Word maps the control bits of the<br>drive. This parameter indicates the control bits of<br>the terminal block or of the bus communication. The<br>allocation is identical with the control word of field<br>bus communication.<br>Bit hex definition (log., 1"state)<br>00 0001 On<br>01 0002 Coast<br>02 0004 Eme Stop<br>03 0008 Run<br>04 0010 -<br>05 0020 -<br>06 0040 -<br>07 0080 Reset<br>08 0100 Jog 1<br>09 02200 Jog 2<br>10 0400 -<br>11 0800 MCW Bit 11<br>12 1000 MCW Bit 13<br>14 4000 MCW Bit 13<br>14 4000 MCW Bit 15<br>14 4000 MCW Bit 15<br>15 Rhow word field bus communication.<br>Bit hex definition (log., 1" state)<br>00 0001 Con<br>00 0000 Cost<br>00 0000 Reset<br>00 0000 Cost<br>10 0400 -<br>11 0800 MCW Bit 13<br>14 4000 MCW Bit 13<br>14 4000 MCW Bit 15<br>15 Rhow word field bus communication.<br>Bit hex definition (log., "1" state)<br>00 0001 Rdy Running<br>02 0004 Running<br>03 0008 Fault<br>04 0010 Cosst Act (not)<br>05 0020 Eme Stop Act (not)<br>05 0020 Fault<br>0400 Above Limit 1<br>11 0800 MSW Bit 13 Ass<br>14 4000 MSW Bit 14 Ass<br>14 4000 MS | Grp 2  | Operation Mode (continued)                             |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| emergency stop command:<br>0 - Ramp<br>Motor is decelerated in acc. with a ramp (5.11)<br>1 = Torque Lim<br>Motor is decelerated in accordance with the<br>torque limit<br>2 = Coast<br>Motor coasts to zero speed<br>Response time of deceleration by Ramp or Torque<br>depends on optimization of speed regulator.<br>2.05 Main Crt Word<br>The Main Crt Word maps the control bits of<br>the terminal block or of the bus communication. The<br>allocation is identical with the control bits of<br>the terminal block or of the bus communication. The<br>allocation is identical with the control word of field<br>bus communication.<br>Bit hex definition (log., 1"state)<br>00 0001 On<br>01 0002 Coast<br>02 0004 Eme Stop<br>03 0008 Run<br>04 0010 -<br>10 0800 MCW Bit 11<br>12 1000 MCW Bit 11<br>12 1000 MCW Bit 13<br>14 4000 MCW Bit 13<br>14 4000 MCW Bit 13<br>14 4000 MCW Bit 14<br>15 8000 MCW Bit 15<br>2.06 Main Stat Word<br>01 0002 Rdy Running<br>02 0004 Running<br>02 0004 Running<br>02 0004 Running<br>03 0008 Fault<br>04 0010 Coast Act (not)<br>05 0020 Eme Stop Act (not)<br>06 0040 -<br>07 0080 Aram<br>08 0100 Above Limit 1<br>11 0800 MCW Bit 11<br>12 1000 MCW Bit 13<br>14 4000 MCW Bit 14<br>15 8000 MCW Bit 13<br>11 0000 Reve Limit 1<br>11 0000 Reve Limit 1<br>11 0000 Reve Limit 1<br>11 0000 MCW Bit 11 Ass<br>13 2000 MSW Bitt 13 Ass<br>14 4000 MSW Bitt 14 Ass<br>15 2000 MSW Bitt 14 Ass<br>15 4000 MSW Bitt 14 Ass<br>15 4   | 2.04   | Eme Stop Mode  | 0   | 2   | 0       | Text | х   |                    |
| O = Ramp     Motor is decelerated in acc. with a ramp (5.11)     1 = Torque Lim     Motor is decelerated in accordance with the     torque limi     2 = Coast     Motor coasts to zero speed     Response time of deceleration by Ramp or Torque     depends on optimization of speed regulator. 2.05     Main Ctrl Word     The Main Ctrl Word     Main Ctrl Word     More Torque limit 0 (og., 1'state)     00 0001 On     01 0002     Coast     02 0004 Eme Stop     03 0008 Run     04 0010 -     05 0020 -     06 0040 -     07 0080 Reset     08 0100 Jog 1     09 0200 Jog 2     10 0400 -     11 0800 MCW Bit 11     12 1000 MCW Bit 14     15 8000 MCW Bit 14     15 8000 MCW Bit 15     Stateword of field bus communication. Bit hex definition (log., 1'state)     00 0001 On     01 0002 Coast     02 0004 Eme Stop     03 0008 Run     04 0010 -     05 0020 -     06 0040 -     10 0000 MCW Bit 11     12 1000 MCW Bit 14     15 8000 MCW Bit 14     15 8000 MCW Bit 15     Stateword of field bus communication. Bit hex definition (log., 1'state)     00 0001 On     10 002 Coast     0 0000 MCW Bit 15     11 0800 MCW Bit 14     15 8000 MCW Bit 15     Stateword of field bus communication. Bit hex definition (log. 1'state)     00 0001 Rey Con     00 0000 Run     01 0002 Rdy Running     02 0004 Running     02 0004 Running     03 0008 Fault     04 0010 Coast Act (not)     05 0020 Eme Stop Act (not)     05 0020 Eme Stop Act (not)     06 0040 -     07 0080 Aiam     08 0100 At Sepoint     09 0200 Remote     10 0400 Above Limit 1     1 0800 MCW Bit 11 Ass     12 000 MCW Bit 11 Ass     12 000 MCW Bit 13 Ass     14 4000 MSW Bit 14 Ass     12 000 MCW Bit 13 Ass     14 4000 MSW Bit 14 Ass     15 2000 MCW Bit 13 Ass     14 4000 MSW Bit 14 Ass     14  | Wizard |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| Motor is decelerated in acc. with a ramp (5.11)       1 = Torque Lim         Motor is decelerated in accordance with the torque limit       2 = Coast         2.2 Coast       Motor coasts to zero speed         Response time of deceleration by Ramp or Torque depends on optimization of speed regulator.       -         2.6 Main Ctrl Word       -         The Main Ctrl Word maps the control bits of the drive. This parameter indicates the control bits of the titerminal block or of the bus communication. The allocation is identical with the control word of field bus communication.         Bit hex definition (log1*Istate)       -         00 0001       -         05 00001       -         06 00001       -         07 0080       Reset         08 0100       Jog 2         10 0400       -         11 0300       MCW Bit 12         13 2000       MCW Bit 14         15 8000       MCW Bit 15         15 8000       MCW Bit 15         16 0001       Running         01 0002       Coast Adverd         02 0004       Run Stat Word maps the status bits of drive and status logic. The allocation is identical with the status word of field bus communication.         Bit hex definition (log. 1*1 state)       -       -         00 00001       Rdy Running       -       -  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 1 = Torque Lim       Mator is decelerated in accordance with the torque limit       2         2 = Coast       Motor coasts to zero speed         Response time of deceleration by Ramp or Torque depends on optimization of speed regulator.       -         2.05       Main Ctrl Word       -         The Main Ctrl Word       -       -         allocation is identical with the control bits of the drive. This parameter indicates the control bits of the terminal block or of the bus communication. The allocation is identical with the control word of field bus communication (log1"state)       -         00 0001       On       -       -         01 0002       Coast       -       -         02 0004       Eme Stop       -       -         03 0008       Run       -       -         04 0010       -       -       -         05 0020       -       -       -         06 0040       -       -       -         07 0800       Reset       -       -         08 0100       Jog 1       -       -         10 04000       -       -       -         11 0800       MCW Bit 12       -       -         12 0000       MCW Bit 14       -       -         15 80000       <   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| Motor is decelerated in accordance with the torge limit       2 = Coast         Wator coasts to zero speed       Motor coasts to zero speed regulator.         2.05       Main Crt Word       -         Signal       The Main Crt Word maps the control bits of the drive. This parameter indicates the control bits of the terminal block or of the bus communication. The allocation is identical with the control word of field bus communication.       -         Bit hex definition (log. "1'state)       0       0         000001       0       0         010002       Coast       -         020004       Eme Stop       -         03 0008       Run       -         04 0010       -       -         05 0020       -       -         06 0040       -       -         07 0080       Reset       -         08 0100       Jog 1       -         11 0800       MCW Bit 12       -         13 2000       MCW Bit 14       -         15 8000       MCW Bit 15       -         16 4000       -       -         17 0800       Reset       -         18 000       MCW Bit 15       -         19 0000       Redinition (log. ''' state)       -         1  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| torque limit     2 = Coast     Motor coasts to zero speed       Response time of deceleration by Ramp or Torque<br>depends on optimization of speed regulator.     -     -       2.05     Main Ctrl Word maps the control bits of the<br>drive. This parameter indicates the control bits of<br>the terminal block or of the bus communication. The<br>allocation is identical with the control word of field<br>bus communication.     -     -       Bit hex definition (log., 1"state)     0     00001     Coast       00 0001     On     -     -       01 0002     Coast     -     -       02 0004     Eme Stop     -     -       03 0008     Run     -     -       04 0010     -     -     -       05 0020     -     -     -       08 0100     Jog 2     -     -       10 0400     -     -     -       11 0800     MCW Bit 11     -     -       12 13 2000     MCW Bit 14     -     -       15 8000     MCW Bit 15     -     -       11 0400     -     -     -       12 13 2000     MCW Bit 14     -     -       13 2000     MCW Bit 15     -     -       14 4000     Coast Act (not)     -     -       10 0400 -     -     -     -   <  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 2 = Coast<br>Motor coasts to zero speed<br>Response time of deceleration by Ramp or Torque<br>depends on optimization of speed regulator.       -       -       hex         2.05       Main Ctrl Word<br>drive. This parameter indicates the control bits of the<br>drive. This parameter indicates the control bits of the<br>terminal block or of the bus communication. The<br>allocation is identical with the control word of field<br>bus communication.       -       -       hex         Bit hex definition (log.,1"state)<br>00 0001 On<br>01 0002 Coast<br>02 0004 Eme Stop<br>03 0008 Run<br>04 0010 -       -       -       -       hex         05 00200 -<br>06 0040 -<br>07 0080 Reset<br>08 0100 Jog 1<br>09 0200 Jog 2<br>10 0400 -<br>11 0800 MCW Bit 12<br>11 2 1000 MCW Bit 12<br>13 2000 MCW Bit 12<br>13 2000 MCW Bit 13<br>14 4000 MCW Bit 14<br>15 8000 MCW Bit 14<br>16 8000 MCW Bit 14<br>17 800 MCW Bit 14<br>17 800 MCW Bit 14<br>18 800 MSW Bit 14 Ass       -       -       hex   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| Motor coasts to zero speed<br>Response time of deceleration by Ramp or Torque<br>depends on optimization of speed regulator.       -       -       -       hex         2.05       Main Ctrl Word<br>the Main Ctrl Word maps the control bits of the<br>drive. This parameter indicates the control bits of<br>the terminal block or of the bus communication. The<br>allocation is identical with the control word of field<br>bus communication.<br>Bit hex definition (log1"state)       -       -       -       hex         00 0001       On<br>01 0002       Coast       -       -       -       -         02 0004       Eme Stop       -       -       -       -       -         03 0008       Run       -       -       -       -       -         04 0010       -       -       -       -       -       -         05 0202       -       -       -       -       -       -         08 0100       Jog 1       -       -       -       -       -         11 0800       MCW Bit 11       -       -       -       -       -         12 13 2000       McW Bit 14       15 8000       MCW Bit 15       -       -       -       -         2004       Ruy On       -       -       -       -       -       -       -  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| Response time of deceleration by Ramp of Torque depends on optimization of speed regulator.       -       -       -       hex         2.05       Main Ctrl Word       -       -       -       hex         Signal       The Main Ctrl Word maps the control bits of the drive. This parameter indicates the control bits of the terminal block or of the bus communication. The allocation is identical with the control word of field bus communication.       -       -       hex         Bit hex definition (log,1"state)       00001 On       -       -       -       hex         02 0004       Eme Stop       -       -       -       -       hex         04 0010 -       -       -       -       -       -       -       -         04 0010 -       -       -       -       -       -       -       -       -         05 0020 -       - <t< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></t<>  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| depends on optimization of speed regulator.       -       -       -       -       -       -       hex         2.05       Main Ctrl Word maps the control bits of the drive. This parameter indicates the control bits of the terminal block or of the bus communication. The allocation is identical with the control word of field bus communication.       -       -       -       hex       -       -       hex       -       -       hex       -       hex       -       hex       -       -       hex       -       -       hex       -       -       hex       1       10       0  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 2.05Main Ctrl Word<br>main Ctrl Word maps the control bits of<br>the terminal block or of the bus communication. The<br>allocation is identical with the control word of field<br>bus communication.<br>Bit hex definition (log., 1"state)<br>00 0001 On<br>01 0002 Coast<br>02 0004 Eme Stop<br>03 0008 Run<br>04 0010 -<br>06 0020 -<br>06 0040 -<br>07 0080 Reset<br>09 0200 Jog 2<br>10 0400 -<br>11 0800 MCW Bit 11<br>12 1000 MCW Bit 11<br>12 1000 MCW Bit 13<br>14 4000 MCW Bit 14<br>15 8000 MCW Bit 14<br>16 8000 MCW Bit 14<br>16 8000 MCW Bit 14<br>17 10 000 RCW Bit 14<br>16 8000 MCW Bit 14<br>17 10 000 RCW Bit 14<br>16 8000 MCW Bit 14<br>17 10 000 RCW Running<br>00 0001 Rdy On<br>00 0000 Rdy On<br>00 0000 Rdy On<br>00 0000 Rdy On<br>00 0000 Resolution<br>00 0000 Rdy Cn<br>00 0000 Rdy Cn<br>00 0000 Rdy Cn<br>00 0000 Resolution<br>00 0000 Resolution<br>00 0000 Rdy Cn<br>00 0000 Resolution<br>00 0000 Rdy Cn<br>00 0000 Rdy Cn<br>00 0000 Rdy Cn<br>00 0000 Resolution<br>00 0000 Resolution<br>00 0000 Resolution<br>00 0000 Resolution<br>00 0000   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| Signal       The Main Ctrl Word maps the control bits of the drive. This parameter indicates the control bits of the terminal block or of the bus communication. The allocation is identical with the control word of field bus communication.         Bit       hex       definition (log., 1"state)         00       00001       On         01       00002       Coast         02       0004       Eme Stop         03       0008       Run         04       0010       -         05       0020       -         06       0040       -         07       0800       Reset         08       0100       Jog 2         10       04000       -         11       0800       MCW Bit 12         12       13       2000       MCW Bit 15         2.06       Main Stat Word maps the status bits of drive and status logic. The allocation is identical with the status word of field bus communication.       -         Bit hex       definition (log. "1" state)       -       -         000001       Rdy Running       -       -       -         Signal       The Main Stat Word maps the status bits of drive and status logic. The allocation is identical with the status word of field bus communication.       -       -       -   | 2.05   |  | -   | -   | -       | hex  |     |                    |
| drive. This parameter indicates the control bits of the terminal block or of the bus communication. The allocation is identical with the control word of field bus communication.       Image: Control of the bus communication. The allocation is identical with the control word of field bus communication.         Bit hex       definition (log., 1"state)       Image: Control of the bus communication.         00       0001       On       Image: Control of the bus communication.         01       0002       Coast       Image: Control of the bus communication.         02       0004       Eme Stop       Image: Control of the bus communication.         03       0008       Run       Image: Control of the bus communication.         04       0010       -       Image: Control of the bus communication.         05       00200       Jog 2       Image: Control of the bus communication.         09       0200       Jog 1       Image: Control of the bus communication.         11       0800       MCW Bit 11       Image: Control of the bus communication.         12       10       0400 -       -       -       -         11       10       8000       MCW Bit 14       Image: Control of the bus communication.       -       -       -         Signal       The Main Stat Word       -       -       -       -       <   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| allocation is identical with the control word of field<br>bus communication.       Image: status of the control word of field<br>bus communication.       Image: status of the control word of field<br>bus communication.       Image: status of the control word of field<br>bus communication.       Image: status of the control word of field<br>bus communication.       Image: status of the control word of field<br>bus communication.       Image: status of the control word of field<br>bus communication.       Image: status of the control word of field<br>bus communication.       Image: status of the control word of field<br>bus communication.       Image: status of the control word of field bus communication.         00       0000 0001 -<br>000 0000 Revent<br>11 0800 MCW Bit 12<br>13 2000 MCW Bit 12<br>13 2000 MCW Bit 13<br>14 4000 MCW Bit 15       Image: status of the control word of field bus communication.       Image: status of the control word of field bus communication.         Signal       The Main Stat Word maps the status bits of drive<br>and status logic. The allocation is identical with the<br>status word of field bus communication.       Image: status of the control word of field bus communication.       Image: status of the control word of field bus communication.         00       00001 Rdy On<br>01 0002 Rdy Running<br>02 0004 Running<br>03 0008 Fault<br>04 0010 At Stepioint<br>08 0000 Atarm<br>08 0000 Atarm<br>08 0000 Atarm<br>09 0200 Remote<br>10 0400 Above Limit 1<br>11 0800 MSW Bitt 12 Ass<br>13 2000 MSW Bitt 13 Ass       Image: status of the cont of t  | 0      |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| bus communication.<br>Bit hex definition (log., 1"state)         -   |        | •  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| Bit hex definition (log. "1"state)   |        | allocation is identical with the control word of field |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 00       0001       On       On         01       0002       Coast       Coast         02       0004       Erme Stop       Coast         03       0008       Run       Coast       Coast         04       0010       -       Coast       Coast         05       0020       -       Coast       Coast         06       0400       -       -       Coast         09       0200       Jog 2       -       Coast         10       0400       -       -       -         11       0800       MCW Bit 11       -       -         12       1000       MCW Bit 12       -       -         13       2000       MCW Bit 13       -       -         15       8000       MCW Bit 14       -       -         15       8000       MCW Bit 14       -       -         15       8000       MCW Bit 13       -       -         ad status logic. The allocation is identical with the status word of field bus communication.       -       -         N01       002       Rdy Con       -       -       -         00       001       Co  |        | bus communication.                                     |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 01       0002       Coast         02       0004       Eme Stop         03       0008       Run         04       0010       -         05       0020       -         06       0040       -         07       0080       Reset         08       0100       Jog 1         09       0200       Jog 2         10       0400       -         11       0800       MCW Bit 11         12       13       2000       MCW Bit 12         13       2000       MCW Bit 15         2.06       Main Stat Word       -       -         The Main Stat Word maps the status bits of drive and status logic. The allocation is identical with the status word of field bus communication.       -         Bit hex       definition (log. "1" state)       -       -         00       0002       Rdy Running       -       -         02       0004       Running       -       -         03       008       Fault       -       -         04       001       Coast Act (not)       -       -         05       0020       Eme Stop Act (not)       -       - </td <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 02       0004       Eme Stop         03       0008       Run         04       0010       -         05       0020       -         06       0404       -         07       0080       Reset         08       0100       Jog 1         09       0200       Jog 2         10       0400       -         11       0800       MCW Bit 11         12       1000       MCW Bit 12         13       2000       MCW Bit 13         14       4000       MCW Bit 14         15       8000       MCW Bit 14         15       8000       MCW Bit 15         2.06       Main Stat Word       -         The Main Stat Word maps the status bits of drive and status logic. The allocation is identical with the status word of field bus communication.         Bit hex       definition (log. "1" state)         00       000       000         03       008       Fault         04       010       Coast Act (not)         05       0200       Eme Stop Act (not)         05       0200       Eme Stop Act (not)         05       0200       Eme Stop Act (not) <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 03       0008       Run  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 04 0010 -        |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 05         0020         - <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 06         0040         -           07         0080         Reset           08         0100         Jog 1           09         0200         Jog 2           10         0400         -           11         0800         MCW Bit 11           12         1000         MCW Bit 12           13         2000         MCW Bit 13           14         4000         MCW Bit 14           15         8000         MCW Bit 15           2.06         Main Stat Word         -           The Main Stat Word         -         -           The Main Stat Word         -         -           Main Stat Word         -         -           Main Stat Word         -         -           No         00001         Rdy On           01         0002         Rdy Running           02         0004         -           07         080         Alarm           08         0100         A Stepoint           09         0200         Remote           10         0400         A Stepoint           09         0200         Remote           10         040   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 07         0080         Reset         -  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 08         0100         Jog 1           09         0200         Jog 2           10         0400           11         0800         MCW Bit 11           12         1000         MCW Bit 12           13         2000         MCW Bit 13           14         4000         MCW Bit 14           15         8000         MCW Bit 15           -           -           -           Amin Stat Word         -           The Main Stat Word         -           The Main Stat Word         -           The Main Stat Word         -           Signal         The Main Stat Word           00         00101           Rdy On         01           0002         Rdy Running           02         0004           03         0008           04         010           Coast Act (not)           06         040           07         080           03         0200           Remote         -           10         0400           04004         -           07         080     <  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 09       0200       Jog 2         10       0400       -         11       0800       MCW Bit 11         12       100       MCW Bit 12         13       2000       MCW Bit 13         14       4000       MCW Bit 14         15       8000       MCW Bit 15         2.06       Main Stat Word       -         The Main Stat Word maps the status bits of drive and status logic. The allocation is identical with the status word of field bus communication.       -         Bit hex definition (log. "1" state)       00       00001         00       0001       Rdy Running         02       0004       Running         03       0008       Fault         04       0010       Coast Act (not)         05       0020       Eme Stop Act (not)         06       040       -         07       080       Alarm         08       0100       At Setpoint         09       0200       Remote         10       0400       Above Limit 1         11       10800       MSW Bit 12 Ass         13       2000       MSW Bit 14 Ass         14       4000       MSW Bit 14 Ass </td <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 10       0400       -         11       0800       MCW Bit 11         12       1000       MCW Bit 12         13       2000       MCW Bit 13         14       4000       MCW Bit 14         15       8000       MCW Bit 15         2.06       Main Stat Word       -         The Main Stat Word maps the status bits of drive and status logic. The allocation is identical with the status word of field bus communication.       -         Bit hex definition (log. "1" state)       -       -         00       001       Rdy On         01       0022       Rdy Running         02       004       Running         03       008       Fault         04       0010       Coast Act (not)         05       0020       Eme Stop Act (not)         06       0440       -         07       0800       Alarm         08       0100       At Setpoint         09       0200       Remote         10       0400       Above Limit 1         11       0800       MSW Bit 13 Ass         12       1000       MSW Bit 14 Ass         13       2000       MSW Bit 14 Ass  |        | 5  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 11       0800       MCW Bit 11         12       1000       MCW Bit 12         13       2000       MCW Bit 13         14       4000       MCW Bit 14         15       8000       MCW Bit 15         2.06       Main Stat Word       -       -         The Main Stat Word maps the status bits of drive and status logic. The allocation is identical with the status word of field bus communication.       -       -         Bit hex       definition (log. "1" state)       -       -       -         00       0001       Rdy On       -       -       -         01       0002       Rdy Running       -       -       -         02       0004       Running       -       -       -         03       0008       Fault       -       -       -         04       0010       Coast Act (not)       -       -       -         05       0020       Eme Stop Act (not)       -       -       -         06       0440       -       -       -       -         07       0800       Alarm       -       -       -         08       0100       At Setpoint       -       -   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 12       1000       MCW Bit 12         13       2000       MCW Bit 13         14       4000       MCW Bit 14         15       8000       MCW Bit 15         2.06       Main Stat Word       -       -         The Main Stat Word       -       -       -         and status logic. The allocation is identical with the status word of field bus communication.       -       -         Bit       hex       definition (log. "1" state)       -       -         00       0001       Rdy On       -       -       -         01       0002       Rdy Running       -       -       -         02       0004       Running       -       -       -         03       0008       Fault       -       -       -         04       0010       Coast Act (not)       -       -       -         05       0020       Eme Stop Act (not)       -       -       -         06       0400       -       -       -       -         07       0808       Alarm       -       -       -         08       0100       At Setpoint       -       -       -  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 14 4000       MCW Bit 14         15 8000       MCW Bit 15         2.06       Main Stat Word         Signal       The Main Stat Word maps the status bits of drive and status logic. The allocation is identical with the status word of field bus communication.         Bit hex       definition (log. "1" state)         00       0001         Rdy On       01         01       002         02       004         Running       02         03       0008         04       0010         Coast Act (not)         05       0020         Eme Stop Act (not)         06       0440 -         07       080         08       0100         At Setpoint         09       0200         Remote         10       0400         11       188         12       1000         13       2000         MSW Bitt 11 Ass         12       1000         14       4000         14       4000  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 15         8000         MCW Bit 15         -         -         -         -         hex         -           2.06         Main Stat Word         -         -         -         -         hex         -         -         -         hex         -         -         -         hex         -         -         hex         -         -         hex         -         -         hex         -         -         -         -         hex         -         -         -         hex         -   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 2.06       Main Stat Word       -       -       -       -       hex         Signal       The Main Stat Word maps the status bits of drive and status logic. The allocation is identical with the status word of field bus communication.       -       -       -       -       hex       hex         Bit       hex       definition (log. "1" state)       00       00001       Rdy On       -       -       -       -       -       hex       -       -       -       hex       -   |        | 14 4000 MCW Bit 14                                     |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| SignalThe Main Stat Word maps the status bits of drive<br>and status logic. The allocation is identical with the<br>status word of field bus communication.<br>Bit hex definition (log. "1" state)<br>00 0001 Rdy On<br>01 0002 Rdy Running<br>02 0004 Running<br>03 0008 Fault<br>04 0010 Coast Act (not)<br>05 0020 Eme Stop Act (not)<br>06 0040 -<br>07 0080 Alarm<br>08 0100 At Setpoint<br>09 0200 Remote<br>10 0400 Above Limit 1<br>11 0800 MSW Bitt 11 Ass<br>12 1000 MSW Bitt 12 Ass<br>13 2000 MSW Bitt 14 Ass  |        | 15 8000 MCW Bit 15                                     |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| and status logic. The allocation is identical with the<br>status word of field bus communication.Bit hex definition (log. "1" state)00 0001 Rdy On01 0002 Rdy Running02 0004 Running03 0008 Fault04 0010 Coast Act (not)05 0020 Eme Stop Act (not)06 0040 -07 0080 Alarm08 0100 At Setpoint09 0200 Remote10 0400 Above Limit 111 0800 MSW Bitt 11 Ass12 1000 MSW Bitt 12 Ass13 2000 MSW Bitt 13 Ass14 4000 MSW Bitt 14 Ass   |        |  | -   | -   | -       | hex  |     |                    |
| status word of field bus communication.         Bit       hex       definition (log. "1" state)         00       0001       Rdy On         01       0002       Rdy Running         02       0004       Running         03       0008       Fault         04       0010       Coast Act (not)         05       0020       Eme Stop Act (not)         06       0040       -         07       0080       Alarm         08       0100       At Setpoint         09       0200       Remote         10       0400       Above Limit 1         11       0800       MSW Bitt 11 Ass         12       1000       MSW Bitt 13 Ass         13       2000       MSW Bitt 14 Ass   | Signal |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| Bit hex       definition (log. "1" state)         00       0001         01       0002         Rdy Running         02       0004         03       0008         Fault         04       0010         Coast Act (not)         05       0020         Eme Stop Act (not)         06       0040         07       0080         Alarm         08       0100         At Setpoint         09       0200         Remote         10       0400         Above Limit 1         11       0800         MSW Bitt 12 Ass         13       2000         MSW Bitt 13 Ass         14       4000  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 00       0001       Rdy On         01       0002       Rdy Running         02       0004       Running         03       0008       Fault         04       0010       Coast Act (not)         05       0020       Eme Stop Act (not)         06       0040       -         07       0080       Alarm         08       0100       At Setpoint         09       0200       Remote         10       0400       Above Limit 1         11       0800       MSW Bitt 11 Ass         12       1000       MSW Bitt 12 Ass         13       2000       MSW Bitt 14 Ass   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 01       0002       Rdy Running         02       0004       Running         03       0008       Fault         04       0010       Coast Act (not)         05       0020       Eme Stop Act (not)         06       0040       -         07       0080       Alarm         08       0100       At Setpoint         09       0200       Remote         10       0400       Above Limit 1         11       0800       MSW Bitt 11 Ass         12       1000       MSW Bitt 12 Ass         13       2000       MSW Bitt 13 Ass         14       4000       MSW Bitt 14 Ass  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 02       0004       Running         03       0008       Fault         04       0010       Coast Act (not)         05       0020       Eme Stop Act (not)         06       0040       -         07       0080       Alarm         08       0100       At Setpoint         09       0200       Remote         10       0400       Above Limit 1         11       0800       MSW Bitt 12 Ass         13       2000       MSW Bitt 13 Ass         14       4000       MSW Bitt 14 Ass  |        | 5  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 03       0008       Fault         04       0010       Coast Act (not)         05       0020       Eme Stop Act (not)         06       0040       -         07       0080       Alarm         08       0100       At Setpoint         09       0200       Remote         10       0400       Above Limit 1         11       0800       MSW Bitt 12 Ass         13       2000       MSW Bitt 13 Ass         14       4000       MSW Bitt 14 Ass  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 04       0010       Coast Act (not)         05       0020       Eme Stop Act (not)         06       0040       -         07       0080       Alarm         08       0100       At Setpoint         09       0200       Remote         10       0400       Above Limit 1         11       0800       MSW Bitt 11 Ass         12       1000       MSW Bitt 12 Ass         13       2000       MSW Bitt 13 Ass         14       4000       MSW Bitt 14 Ass  |        | 0  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 05       0020       Eme Stop Act (not)         06       0040       -         07       0080       Alarm         08       0100       At Setpoint         09       0200       Remote         10       0400       Above Limit 1         11       0800       MSW Bitt 11 Ass         12       1000       MSW Bitt 12 Ass         13       2000       MSW Bitt 13 Ass         14       4000       MSW Bitt 14 Ass  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 06       0040       -         07       0080       Alarm         08       0100       At Setpoint         09       0200       Remote         10       0400       Above Limit 1         11       0800       MSW Bitt 11 Ass         12       1000       MSW Bitt 12 Ass         13       2000       MSW Bitt 13 Ass         14       4000       MSW Bitt 14 Ass   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 07       0080       Alarm         08       0100       At Setpoint         09       0200       Remote         10       0400       Above Limit 1         11       0800       MSW Bitt 11 Ass         12       1000       MSW Bitt 12 Ass         13       2000       MSW Bitt 13 Ass         14       4000       MSW Bitt 14 Ass   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 08       0100       At Setpoint         09       0200       Remote         10       0400       Above Limit 1         11       0800       MSW Bitt 11 Ass         12       1000       MSW Bitt 12 Ass         13       2000       MSW Bitt 13 Ass         14       4000       MSW Bitt 14 Ass   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 09         0200         Remote           10         0400         Above Limit 1           11         0800         MSW Bitt 11 Ass           12         1000         MSW Bitt 12 Ass           13         2000         MSW Bitt 13 Ass           14         4000         MSW Bitt 14 Ass   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 10       0400       Above Limit 1         11       0800       MSW Bitt 11 Ass         12       1000       MSW Bitt 12 Ass         13       2000       MSW Bitt 13 Ass         14       4000       MSW Bitt 14 Ass  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 11 0800       MSW Bitt 11 Ass         12 1000       MSW Bitt 12 Ass         13 2000       MSW Bitt 13 Ass         14 4000       MSW Bitt 14 Ass  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 12       1000       MSW Bitt 12 Ass         13       2000       MSW Bitt 13 Ass         14       4000       MSW Bitt 14 Ass  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 14 4000 MSW Bitt 14 Ass  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|  |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 15 8000 DDCS Breakdown   |        |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|  |        | 15 8000 DDCS Breakdown                                 |     |     |         |      |     |                    |

II K 4-38

| ParNo. | Parameter name and significance  | Min  | Max   | Default | Unit    | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|--------|--|------|-------|---------|---------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 2  | Operation Mode (continued)   |      |       |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Long Parameter Menu  |      |       |         |         |     |                    |
| 2.07   | Comm Fault Mode<br>Selection of the desired operating response to a<br>communication failure:<br>0 = Ramp<br>Motor is decelerated in accordance with a ramp<br>1 = Torque Lim<br>Motor is decelerated in accordance with the<br>torque limit<br>2 = Coast<br>fault message and shutdown of drive<br>Response time of deceleration by Ramp or Torque<br>depends on optimization of speed regulator.   | 0    | 2     | 0       | Text    |     |                    |
| 2.08   | <b>Comm Fault Time</b><br>Tolerance time for fault messages in the case of<br>communication faults. Time between two successive<br>messages. If (2.08) = 0.00 s ignore, and continue<br>with ongoing operation   | 0.00 | 10.00 | 5.00    | S       | x   |                    |
| 2.09   | Start Mode         Selection of the desired operating response to a start command, while drive is still rotating, braking or coasting         0 = Start From 0: wait until motor has reached zero speed, then re-start         1 = Flying start: Start with the motor actual speed   | 0    | 1     | 1       | Text    | X   |                    |
| 2.10   | DDCS Node Addr<br>Internal DDCS address between DCS400 and the<br>field bus adapter.   | 1    | 254   | 1       | integer | х   |                    |
| 2.11   | DDCS Baud Rate<br>Transmission speed between DCS400 and field bus<br>adapter.<br>0 = 8 Mbaud<br>1 = 4 Mbaud<br>2 = 2 Mbaud<br>3 = 1 Mbaud  | 0    | 3     | 1       | integer | x   |                    |
| 2.12   | PTC Mode         The response of the drive when the thermistor trips is selectable:         0 = Disabled no PTC evaluation         1 = Alarm generates Alarm A05 only         2 = Fault generates Fault F08 and switches the drive off.         A thermistor in the motor (PTC element) can be evaluated via the analog input Al2 in DCS400.         Thermistor connection to X2:3 and X2:4.         Connect X2:4 with X2:5 (0V).         Insert the jumper S1:5-6 (22k to 10V).         If PTC is allocated to Al2 this input will not be available to other functions any more. If Al2 is parameterized as a reference source, the Alarm Parameter Conflict (A16) will be generated. | 0    | 2     | 0       | Text    | X   |                    |
| 2.13   | Fan Delay<br>Adjustable time for signal "Fan On". Will be started<br>when the drive is switched off (ON=0). If motor or<br>DCS400 is overheated, Fan Delay will be started<br>after cooling.   | 0    | 1200  | 0       | S       |     |                    |

| ParNo. | Parameter name and significance   | Min   | Max    | Default | Unit    | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|--------|---|-------|--------|---------|---------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 3  | Armature  |       |        |         |         |     | ootting            |
| 3.01   | Arm Cur Ref   | -     | -      | -       | А       |     |                    |
| Signal | Armature current reference value in amperes.  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 3.02   | Arm Cur Act   | -     | -      | -       | А       |     |                    |
| Signal | Measured armature current actual value in   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | amperes.  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 3.03   | Arm Volt Act  | -     | -      | -       | V       |     |                    |
| Signal | Measured armature voltage actual value in volts.  | _     |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 3.04   | Arm Cur Max   | 0     | 200    | 100     | %       | х   |                    |
| Wizard | Overload current. Max. permissible armature current                                       |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | in % related to the nominal motor current (1.01).   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | <b>In</b> dependent of the sign, applies to either direction.                             |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Directional limitations are set in par. Torque Lim Pos                                    |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 0.05   | (3.07) and Torque Lim Neg (3.08).   | 0     | 100    |         | -       |     |                    |
| 3.05   | Overload Time   | 0     | 180    | 0       | s       |     |                    |
|        | Overload time for $l^2t$ function. Max. permissible time for the armature current (3.04). |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | $0 = l^2 t$ function disabled.  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 3.06   | Recovery Time   | 0     | 3600   | 0       | s       |     |                    |
| 5.00   | Recovery time for I <sup>2</sup> t function, during which a                               | 0     | 3000   |         | 5       |     |                    |
|        | reduced current must flow.  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | $0 = l^2 t$ function disabled.  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 3.07   | Torque Lim Pos  | 0     | 200    | 100     | %       | Х   |                    |
| Wizard | Positive overload torque. Max. permissible positive                                       | Ū     |        |         | 70      |     |                    |
|        | torque in % related to the nominal torque.  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | (The nominal torque is defined as the torque  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | resulting from nominal field current and nominal  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | armature current)   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | The torque reference is limited as a function of the                                      |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | sign. The current resulting from this operation is  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | then limited in parameter Arm Cur Max (3.04)  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | independent of the sign i.e. the smaller the two  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | values will be effective.   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Is also used as positive current limitation if  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Cur Contr Mode (3.14) = Cur Contr   |       | -      |         |         |     |                    |
| 3.08   | Torque Lim Neg  | -200  | 0      | -100    | %       | Х   |                    |
| Wizard | •   |       |        | (4-Q)   |         |     |                    |
|        | negative torque in % related to the nominal torque.                                       |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | (The nominal torque is defined as the torque  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | resulting from nominal field current and nominal<br>armature current)                     |       |        | (2-Q)   |         |     |                    |
|        | Limits the torque reference as a function of the sign.                                    |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | The current resulting from this operation is then   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | limited in par. Arm Cur Max (3.04) independent of   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | the sign i.e. the smaller the two values (amounts)  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | will be effective.  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Is also used as negative current limitation if  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Cur Contr Mode $(3.14) = $ Cur Contr  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 3.09   | Arm Cur Reg KP  | 0.000 | 10.000 | 0.100   | integer |     |                    |
| auto-  | Proportional gain of the armature current controller                                      |       |        |         | 35      |     |                    |
| tuning | (PI controller).  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 3      | annea naacible if the drive is in ON status   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |

| ParNo.                         | Parameter   | name and significance  | Min  | Max    | Default | Unit | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|--------------------------------|---|--|------|--------|---------|------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 3                          | Arma  | ture (continued)   |      |        |         |      |     |                    |
| <u>3.10</u><br>auto-<br>tuning | Arm Cur Reg TI<br>Integration time cons<br>controller (PI control   | stant of the armature current<br>ler) in milliseconds.   | 0.0  | 1000.0 | 50.0    | ms   |     |                    |
| 3.11<br>auto-<br>tuning        |   | lue at the limit between<br>tinuous current in % related to<br>urrent (1.01)   | 0    | 100    | 50      | %    |     |                    |
| 3.12<br>auto-<br>tuning        | Arm Inductance<br>Armature circuit inductance in millihenries.  |  | 0.00 | 655.35 | 0.00    | mH   | x   |                    |
| 3.13<br>auto-<br>tuning        | Arm Resistance<br>Armature circuit resi   | stance in milliohms.   | 0    | 65535  | 0       | mOhm | x   |                    |
|                                |   | Parameter Menu   |      |        |         |      |     |                    |
| 3.14                           | Cur Contr Mode<br>0 = Macro depend<br>1 = Speed Contr<br>2 = Torque Contr<br>3 = Cur Contr<br>4 = Speed+Torque<br>5 = Lim SP Ctr<br>6 = Lim Trq Ctr | The operating mode is defined<br>by macro, see macro descript.<br>Speed control<br>Current control<br>Speed + torque, both<br>reference values are added<br>Speed control with external<br>torque limitation. That speed<br>reference via Al1 can be<br>limited externally via Al2 in its<br>torque. The torque limitation is<br>sign-independent.<br>Torque control with speed<br>limitation (window control<br>mode) for master-slave<br>applications. Master and slave<br>receive the same speed<br>reference. The slave has its<br>own speed feedback (tacho-<br>generator / encoder), but is<br>working in the current or<br>torque control mode. If the<br>speed deviation (reference /<br>actual value) is too big, there<br>will be an automatic<br>changeover to speed control<br>until the deviation is corrected.<br>Then this mode will be<br>resumed. | 0    | 6      | 0       | Text | x   |                    |

| ParNo.                | Parameter name and significance   | Min  | Max  | Default | Unit   | (1) | custom. |
|-----------------------|---|------|------|---------|--------|-----|---------|
| Grp 3                 | Armature (continued)  |      |      |         |        |     | setting |
| 3.15                  | Torque Ref Sel<br>Selection of the desired torque reference location:<br>0 = Macro depend / dependent on the select. macro<br>1 = Al1 / analog input 1 (X2:1-2)<br>2 = Al2 / analog input 2 (X2:3-4)<br>3 = Bus Main Ref / main fieldbus reference value<br>4 = Bus Aux Ref / auxiliary fieldbus reference value<br>5 = Fixed Torque / fixed torque value (3.22)<br>6 = Commis Ref1 / commissioning reference value 1<br>7 = Commis Ref2 / commissioning reference value 2<br>8 = Squarewave / square-wave generator<br>9 = Const Zero / constant zero speed<br>It is also used as current reference source if<br>Cur Contr Mode (3.14) = Cur Contr | 0    | 9    | 0       | Text   | ×   |         |
| 3.16                  | Cur Slope<br>Max. permissble modification of the armature<br>current reference value (di/dt) in % per millisecond<br>related to the nominal motor current (1.01).   | 0.1  | 30.0 | 10.0    | % / ms |     |         |
| 3.17<br>Wizard        | Stall Torque         Motor stall protection.         Stall protection tripping threshold in % of the nominal torque at stalled motor.         (The nominal torque is defined as the torque resulting from nominal field current and nominal armature current)   | 0    | 200  | 100     | %      |     |         |
| <b>3.18</b><br>Wizard | Stall Time<br>Motor stall protection.<br>Time interval in seconds, during which the stall<br>protection tripping threshold at stalled motor must<br>be exceeded.  | 0.0  | 60.0 | 0.0     | S      |     |         |
| 3.19<br>Signal        | Firing Angle<br>Actual firing angle in degrees  | -    | -    | -       | 0      |     |         |
| 3.20<br>Signal        | EMF Act<br>Actual counter EMF of motor in volts.  | -    | -    | -       | V      |     |         |
| 3.21<br>Signal        | <b>Power Act</b><br>Actual power output in kilowatts (updating all 20 ms)   | -    | -    | -       | kW     |     |         |
| 3.22                  | Fixed Torque<br>Fixed torque value presetting.<br>Fixed torque value in % related to the nominal<br>torque.<br>(The nominal torque is defined as the torque<br>resulting from nominal field current and nominal<br>armature current)  | -100 | 100  | 0       | %      |     |         |
| 3.23<br>Signal        | Torque Act<br>Actual torque value in % related to the nominal<br>torque.<br>(The nominal torque is defined as the torque<br>resulting from nominal field current and nominal<br>armature current)   | -    | -    | -       | %      |     |         |
| 3.24                  | Cur Lim 2 Inv<br>Second current limitation in % related to the nominal<br>motor current (1.01). Can be activated via binary<br>signal. Refer also to parameter (9.17).  | 0    | 200  | 100     | %      | x   |         |

| ParNo.      | Parameter name and significance   | Min   | Max    | Default | Unit    | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|-------------|---|-------|--------|---------|---------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 4       | Field   |       |        |         |         |     | Ŭ                  |
| 4.01        | Field Cur Ref   | -     | -      | -       | А       |     |                    |
| Signal      | Field current reference value in amperes.   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 4.02        | Field Cur Act   | -     | -      | -       | А       |     |                    |
| Signal      | Measured field current actual value in amperes.   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| <u>4.03</u> | Field Cur KP  | 0.000 | 13.499 | 0.300   | integer |     |                    |
| auto-       | Proportional gain of the field current controller   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| tuning      | (PI controller).  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| <u>4.04</u> | Field Cur TI  | 0     | 5120   | 200     | ms      |     |                    |
| auto-       | Integration time constant of the field current  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| tuning      | controller  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | (PI controller) in milliseconds.  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | Long Parameter Menu   | -     |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 4.05        | Fld Ov Cur Trip   | 0     | 200    | 130     | %       |     |                    |
|             | Field <b><u>over</u></b> current tripping in % related to the field   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | current nominal value (1.03).   | -     |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 4.06        | Field Low Trip  | 0     | 100    | 30      | %       |     |                    |
|             | Field <u>undercurrent</u> tripping value in % related to the  | _     |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | field current nominal value (1.03).   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | Considerably lower values than the default setting  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | may be required for field weakening or field heating.   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | In the field weakening mode a value smaller than<br>the field weakening current (acc. to the name plate               |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | of the motor) shall be entered. In field heating this   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | value must be smaller than the value of Field Heat  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | Ref (4.10).   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | Otherwise the drive may switch off with the fault   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | message Field Undercurrent (F12).   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 4.07        | Field Cur 40%   | 0     | 100    | 29      | %       |     |                    |
| auto-       | Field current, at which 40% of field flux is reached.   | -     |        |         |         |     |                    |
| tuning      | Proportion of the nominal field current (1.03) in %.  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 4.08        | Field Cur 70%   | 0     | 100    | 53      | %       |     |                    |
| auto-       | Field current, at which 70% of field flux is reached.   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| tuning      | Proportion of the nominal field current (1.03) in %.  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| <u>4.09</u> | Field Cur 90%   | 0     | 100    | 79      | %       |     |                    |
| auto-       | Field current, at which 90% of field flux is reached.   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| tuning      | Proportion of the nominal field current (1.03) in %.  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 4.10        | Field Heat Ref  | 0     | 30     | 0       | %       |     |                    |
|             | Current reference value for the field heating in %  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | related to the nominal field current value (1.03).  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | 0 = without field heating   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | >0 = with field heating (heating current in %)  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | With this parameter, an anti-condensation heating   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | via the field winding can be implemented for the  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | motor. The field heating will switch on automatically   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | when the drive is stopped ( <b>RUN=</b> 0) and the actual   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | speed is lower than <b>Zero Speed Lev (5.15)</b> . When the drive starts again ( <b>RUN</b> =1) the drive will switch |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | over to nominal field current.  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | In case of field heating this value must be higher  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | than the value of <b>Field Low Trip (4.06).</b>   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 4.11        | EMF KP  | 0.000 | 10.000 | 0.550   | integer |     |                    |
| auto-       | Proportional gain of the EMF controller   | 0.000 | 10.000 | 0.000   | lineger |     |                    |
| tuning      | (PI controller).  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| <u>4.12</u> | EMF TI  | 0     | 10240  | 160     | ms      |     |                    |
| auto-       | Integration time constant of the EMF controller   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| tuning      | (PI controller) in milliseconds.  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
|             | ongoo noosihlo if the drive is in ON status   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |

| ParNo.                         | Parameter name and significance  | Min   | Max    | Default | Unit    | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|--------------------------------|--|-------|--------|---------|---------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 5                          | Speed Controller   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 5.01                           | Speed Ref Sel<br>Selection of the desired speed reference location:<br>0 = Macro depend / dependent on the selected<br>macro<br>1 = Al1 / analog input 1 (X2:1-2)<br>2 = Al2 / analog input 2 (X2:3-4)<br>3 = Bus Main Ref / main fieldbus reference value<br>4 = Bus Aux Ref / auxiliary fieldbus reference value<br>5 = Fixed Sp1 / fixed speed value 1 (5.13)<br>6 = Fixed Sp2 / fixed speed value 2 (5.14)<br>7 = Commis Ref1 / commissioning ref. value 1<br>8 = Commis Ref2 / commissioning ref. value 2<br>9 = Squarewave / square-wave generator | 0     | 10     | 0       | Text    | x   |                    |
|                                | 10 = Const Zero / constant zero speed  |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| <b>5.02</b><br>Wizard          | Speed Meas Mode<br>Selection of the desired speed feedback:<br>0 = EMF (i.e. without speed measurement)<br>1 = Analog Tacho<br>2 = Encoder   | 0     | 2      | 0       | Text    | x   |                    |
| 5.03                           | Encoder Inc  | 20    | 10000  | 1024    | integer | х   |                    |
| Wizard                         | Number of the encoder increments per revolution.   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 5.04                           | Speed Ref  | -     | -      | -       | rpm     |     |                    |
| Signal<br><b>5.05</b>          | Actual speed reference value in revolutions/minute. Speed Act  | -     | -      |         | rnm     |     |                    |
| Signal                         | Actual speed value used by the speed controller, in revolutions/minute.  | -     | -      | -       | rpm     |     |                    |
| <b>5.06</b><br>Signal          | Tacho Speed Act<br>Actual speed value measured by the analog<br>tachometer, in revolutions/minute.   | -     | -      | -       | rpm     |     |                    |
| <u>5.07</u><br>auto-<br>tuning | <b>Speed Reg KP</b><br>Proportional gain of the speed controller<br>(PI controller).   | 0.000 | 15.000 | 0.200   | integer |     |                    |
| 5.08<br>auto-<br>tuning        | Speed Reg TI<br>Integration time constant of the speed controller<br>(PI controller) in milliseconds.  | 0.0   | 6553.5 | 5000.0  | ms      |     |                    |
| <b>5.09</b><br>Wizard          | Accel Ramp<br>Duration of the acceleration ramp in seconds in the<br>case of acceleration from 0 to maximum speed (1.06).  | 0.0   | 3000.0 | 10.0    | S       | x   |                    |
| <b>5.10</b><br>Wizard          | <b>Decel Ramp</b><br>Duration of the deceleration ramp in seconds in the<br>case of deceleration from maximum speed (1.06) to 0.   | 0.0   | 3000.0 | 10.0    | S       | x   |                    |
| <b>5.11</b><br>Wizard          | <b>Eme Stop Ramp</b><br>Duration of the deceleration ramp in seconds in the<br>case of deceleration from maximum speed (1.06) to 0,<br>as a consequence of an emergency stop trip.   | 0.0   | 3000.0 | 10.0    | S       | x   |                    |

| ParNo. | Parameter name and significance   | Min   | Max   | Default | Unit | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|--------|---|-------|-------|---------|------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 5  | Speed Controller (continued)  |       |       |         |      |     | J                  |
|        | Long Parameter Menu   |       |       |         |      |     |                    |
| 5.12   | Long Parameter Menu         Ramp Shape       0 = linear         >0 = ramp shape time         Setting the ramp shape:         This parameter adds a filter to the output of the ramp generator to create a ramp shape. The value of this parameter defines the ramp shape time which can be set between 0.08 and 10.00 s. A value < 0.08 but > 0.00 s is set to 0.08 s. The value 0.00 disables the ramp shape time.         Operating mode with ramp shape time:         The selected ramp shape time will be effective for every reference value change, i.e. for the motor potentiometer function, the constant speeds 1 and 2 and during switching on and off with the RUN command. If a communication fault occurs and if the parameter Comm Fault Mode (2.07) = Ramp the ramp shape time will be effective, too.         Operating modes without ramp shape time:         A selected ramp shape time command will not be effective during switching off with the RUN command if the parameter Stop Mode (2.03) = Torque Lim or Coast. The same applies in case of a communication fault. In case of emergency stop by means of the digital input DI5 the ramp shape time will be ineffective, too even if the parameter Eme Stop Mode (2.04) = Ramp. | 0.00  | 10.00 | 0.00    | S    | x   |                    |
| 5.13   | Fixed Speed 1<br>Fixed speed value 1 in revolutions/minute.<br>Parameter specifying a constant speed reference<br>value. Can activated with parameter Speed Ref Sel<br>(5.01) or by a macro. The applicable ramp times are<br>set with the parameters Jog Accel Ramp (5.19)<br>and Jog Decel Ramp (5.20). Is used as jogging<br>and/or constant speed in the macros 1/2/3/4/5<br>/6/7.  | -6500 | 6500  | 0       | rpm  |     |                    |
| 5.14   | Fixed Speed 2<br>Fixed speed value 2 in revolutions/minute.<br>Parameter specifying a second constant speed<br>reference value. Can be activated with parameter<br>Speed Ref Sel (5.01) or by a macro. The applicable<br>ramp times are set with the parameters Jog Accel<br>Ramp (5.19) and Jog Decel Ramp (5.20). Is used<br>as jogging and/or constant speed in the macros 1 /<br>2 / 5.   | -6500 | 6500  | 0       | rpm  |     |                    |

| ParNo.                | Parameter name and significance   | Min | Max    | Default | Unit | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|-----------------------|---|-----|--------|---------|------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 5                 | Speed Controller (continued)  |     |        |         |      |     | ootting            |
| 5.15<br>Wizard        | Zero Speed Lev<br>Zero speed signal. Speed level below which the<br>signal is issued that the motor has reached zero<br>speed.<br>Is used for stall protection, as a standstill message<br>to the drive logic and for the generation of the Zero<br>Speed signal.   | 0   | 100    | 50      | rpm  |     |                    |
| <b>5.16</b><br>Wizard | Speed Level 1<br>Speed limit value for "Speed 1 reached" signal.<br>Is used as "speed reached" message for the macros<br>5 / 6, field bus status Above Limit 1 and the<br>generation of the Speed L1 signal.  | 0   | 6500   | 0       | rpm  |     |                    |
| <b>5.17</b><br>Wizard | <b>Speed Level 2</b><br>Speed limit value for "Speed 2 reached" signal.<br>Is used as "speed reached" message for macro 6<br>and the generation of the <b>Speed L2</b> signal.  | 0   | 6500   | 0       | rpm  |     |                    |
| 5.18                  | Overspeed Trip<br>Overspeed signal tripping value.<br>If the actual speed value exceeds the threshold<br>defined with this parameter the drive will switch off<br>with the fault message <b>Overspeed (F18).</b> Possible<br>causes for Overspeed are described in the chapter<br>Troubleshooting.  | 100 | 200    | 115     | %    |     |                    |
| 5.19                  | Jog Accel Ramp<br>Duration of the acceleration ramp for jogging in the<br>case of acceleration from 0 to maximum speed<br>(1.06).<br>Used for Fixed Speed 1 (5.13) or Fixed Speed 2<br>(5.14). Is also used for the macros 1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 /<br>6 / 7.  | 0.0 | 3000.0 | 10.0    | S    | x   |                    |
| 5.20                  | Jog Decel Ramp<br>Duration of the deceleration ramp for jogging in the<br>case of deceleration from maximum speed (1.06) to<br>0.<br>Used for Fixed Speed 1 (5.13) or Fixed Speed 2<br>(5.14). Is used for the macro 1 / 2 / 5.   | 0.0 | 3000.0 | 10.0    | S    | x   |                    |
| 5.21                  | Alt Par Sel<br>Selection of the alternative parameter set:<br>0 = disabled, i.e. standard parameter set<br>permanently selected<br>1 = enabled, i.e. alternative parameter set<br>permanently selected<br>2 = Macro depend / dependent on the selected<br>macro<br>3 = Sp < Lev1 /Actual speed < Speed level 1 (5.16)<br>4 = Sp < Lev2 /Actual speed < Speed level 2 (5.17)<br>5 = Sp Err <lev1 (5.17)<br="" 2="" <="" error="" level="" speed="">5 = Sp Err<lev2 (5.17)<br="" 2="" <="" error="" level="" speed="">For items 26, the alternative parameter set is<br/>selected in dependence on the defined event.</lev2></lev1> | 0   | 6      | 2       | Text |     |                    |

| ParNo. | Parameter name and significance  | Min   | Max    | Default | Unit    | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|--------|--|-------|--------|---------|---------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 5  | Speed Controller (continued)   |       |        |         |         |     |                    |
| 5.22   | Alt Speed KP<br>Proportional gain of the speed controller<br>(PI controller) for the alternative parameter set.  | 0.000 | 15.000 | 0.200   | integer |     |                    |
| 5.23   | Alt Speed TI<br>Integration time constant of the speed controller<br>(PI controller) in milliseconds for the alternative<br>parameter set.   | 0.0   | 6553.5 | 5000.0  | ms      |     |                    |
| 5.24   | Alt Accel Ramp<br>Duration of the acceleration ramp in the case of<br>acceleration from 0 to maximum speed (1.06) in<br>seconds for the alternative parameter set.   | 0.0   | 3000.0 | 10.0    | S       | x   |                    |
| 5.25   | Alt Decel Ramp<br>Duration of the deceleration ramp in the case of<br>decelerationen from maximum speed (1.06) to 0 in<br>seconds for the alternative parameter set.   | 0.0   | 3000.0 | 10.0    | S       | x   |                    |
| 5.26   | Aux Sp Ref Sel<br>Selection of the desired location for the auxiliary<br>speed reference value:<br>0 = Macro depend/ dependent on the selected<br>macro<br>1 = Al1 / analog input 1 (X2:1-2)<br>2 = Al2 / analog input 2 (X2:3-4)<br>3 = Bus Main Ref / main fieldbus reference value<br>4 = Bus Aux Ref / auxiliary fieldbus reference value<br>5 = Fixed Sp1 / fixed speed value 1 (5.13)<br>6 = Fixed Sp2 / fixed speed value 2 (5.14)<br>7 = Commis Ref1 / commissioning reference val. 1<br>8 = Commis Ref2 / commissioning reference val. 2<br>9 = Squarewave / square-wave generator<br>10 = Const Zero / constant zero speed | 0     | 10     | 0       | Text    | x   |                    |
| 5.27   | <b>Drooping</b><br>Desired decrease in speed at nominal torque in % related to the maximum speed (1.06).<br>Is usually used in slave drives, which are temporarily speed-controlled in order to lower the speed by a specific value in the case of increasing load. The master is not influenced by the slave when the slave is switching over to torque control.<br>This function will also used in drives with a mechanical coupling which is not suited for torque control.   | 0     | 10     | 0       | %       |     |                    |
| 5.28   | <b>Ref Filt Time</b><br>Filter time constant for smoothing speed reference<br>before the speed regulator.  | 0.00  | 10.00  | 0.00    | S       |     |                    |
| 5.29   | Act Filt 1 Time<br>Filter time constant 1 for smoothing speed deviation<br>at the input of the speed regulator.  | 0.00  | 10.00  | 0.00    | S       |     |                    |

| ParNo. | Parameter name and significance  | Min   | Max   | Default | Unit | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|--------|--|-------|-------|---------|------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 5  | Speed Controller (continued)   |       |       |         |      |     |                    |
| 5.30   | Act Filt 2 Time<br>Filter time constant 2 for smoothing speed deviation  | 0.00  | 10.00 | 0.00    | S    |     |                    |
| 5.31   | at the input of the speed regulator.<br><b>Speed Lim Fwd</b><br>Speed reference limitation in forward direction. For<br>reason of safety, this settable limitation is<br>supplemented by an absolute, unchangeable<br>limitation to <b>Max Speed (1.06).</b> | 0     | 6500  | 6500    | rpm  | x   |                    |
| 5.32   | Speed Lim Rev<br>Speed reference limitation in reverse direction. For<br>reason of safety, this settable limitation is<br>supplemented by an absolute, unchangeable<br>limitation to Max Speed (1.06).   | -6500 | 0     | -6500   | rpm  | X   |                    |

| ParNo.                | Parameter name and significance  | Min   | Max   | Default | Unit | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|-----------------------|--|-------|-------|---------|------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 6                 | Input / Output   |       |       |         |      |     |                    |
| 6.01                  | Al1 Scale 100%<br>Scaling of analog input 1: input of a voltage value in<br>volts, which correspond to 100% reference.   | 2.00  | 10.00 | 10.00   | V    |     |                    |
| 6.02                  | Al1 Scale 0%<br>Scaling of analog input 1: input of a voltage value in<br>volts, which corresponds to 0% reference.  | -1.00 | 1.00  | 0.00    | V    |     |                    |
| 6.03                  | Al2 Scale 100%<br>Scaling of the analog input 2: input of a voltage value<br>in volts, which corresponds to 100%.  | 2.00  | 10.00 | 10.00   | V    |     |                    |
| 6.04                  | Al2 Scale 0%<br>Scaling of the analog input 2: input of a voltage value,<br>which corresponds to 0%.   | -1.00 | 1.00  | 0.00    | V    |     |                    |
|                       | Long Parameter Menu  |       |       |         |      |     |                    |
| 6.05<br>Wizard        | AO1 Assign<br>Desired assignment of analog output 1:<br>0 = Macro depend/ dependent on the selected macro<br>1 = Speed Act / actual speed value (5.05)<br>2 = Speed Ref / speed reference value (5.04)<br>3 = Arm Volt Act / armature voltage actual value (3.03)<br>4 = Arm Cur Ref / armature current refer. val. (3.01)<br>5 = Arm Cur Act / armature current actual value (3.02)<br>6 = Power Act / actual power (3.21)<br>7 = Torque Act / torque actual value (3.23)<br>8 = Fld Cur Act / field current actual value (4.02)<br>9 = Dataset 3.2<br>10 = Dataset 3.3<br>11 = Al1 Act / Analogue Input 1 actual value<br>12 = Al2 Act / Analogue Input 2 actual value | 0     | 12    | 0       | Text |     |                    |
| 6.06<br>Wizard        | AO1 Mode<br>Selection of the desired operating mode of analog<br>output 1:<br>0 = bipolar<br>1 = unipolar  | 0     | 1     | 0       | Text |     |                    |
| <b>6.07</b><br>Wizard | AO1 Scale 100%<br>Scaling of analog output 1:<br>Input of a voltage value in volts, which corresponds to<br>100% of the output signal.   | 0.00  | 10.00 | 10.00   | V    |     |                    |
| 6.08<br>Wizard        | AO2 Assign<br>Desired assignment of the analog output 2:<br>Assignment identical with AO1 (6.05).  | 0     | 12    | 0       | Text |     |                    |
| 6.09<br>Wizard        | AO2 Mode<br>Selection of the desired operating mode of analog<br>output 2:<br>0 = bipolar<br>1 = unipolar  | 0     | 1     | 0       | Text |     |                    |
| 6.10<br>Wizard        | AO2 Scale 100%<br>Scaling of analog output 2:<br>input of a voltage value in volts, which corresponds to<br>100% of the output signal.   | 0.00  | 10.00 | 10.00   | V    |     |                    |

| ParNo.    | Parame                        | eter name and significance   | Min | Max | Default | Unit | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|-----------|-------------------------------|--|-----|-----|---------|------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 6     | Inpu                          | t / Output (continued)   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 6.11      | DO1 Assign                    |  | 0   | 32  | 2       | Text |     |                    |
| Wizard    |                               | ent of digital output 1:   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 0 = none                      | 0 constant (for test purposes)   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 1 = Constant 1                | 1 constant (for test purposes)   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 2 = Macro depend              | the output is defined by macro, see macro  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           |                               | description.   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 3 = Rdy for On                | Ready for ON Command. The electronic   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           |                               | supply is switched on, there are no faults.<br>but the drive is still switched OFF (ON=0). |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 4 = Rdy for Run               | Ready for RUN Command. Drive is ON   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | . –                           | (ON=1) but not yet enabled (RUN=0).  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           |                               | Main contactor, fan and field supply are   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           |                               | switched on.   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 5 = Running                   | The drive is enabled (RUN=1).  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 6 = Not Eme Stop<br>7 = Fault | No emergency stop.   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 7 = Fault 8 = Alarm           | A fault has occurred-<br>A warning has been output.  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 9 = Flt or Alarm              | Summary alarm. A fault has occurred OR   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           |                               | a warning has been output.   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 10 = Not (F or A)             | Summary alarm as above, but inverted.  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 11 = Main Cont On             | Control signal to switch ON the main   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 40 5 0                        | contactor.   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 12 = Fan On                   | Control signal to switch ON the fan.   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 13 = Local                    | The drive is controlled LOCALly from the control panel or the PC tool.                     |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 14 = Comm Fault               | The communication between panel/PC   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           |                               | tool/PLC and the drive is faulty.  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 15 = Overtemp Mot             | The motor overtemperature protection has   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           |                               | tripped (PTC to AI2).  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 16 = Overtemp DCS             | The converter overtemperature protection   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 47 Stallad                    | has tripped  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 17 = Stalled<br>18 = Forward  | The motor is stalled.<br>The motor is rotating clockwise.                                  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 19 = Reverse                  | The motor is rotating conter-clockwise.  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 20 = Zero Speed               | Standstill message, speed smaller than   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           |                               | Zero Speed Lev (5.15).   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 21 = Speed L1                 | Speed 1 reached, speed is bigger than or   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 00 0                          | equal to Speed Level 1 (5.16).   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 22 = Speed L2                 | Speed 2 reached, speed is bigger than or equal to <b>Speed Level 2 (5.17)</b> .            |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 23 = Overspeed                | Overspeed, speed is bigger than or equal   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 20 - Overspeed                | to Overspeed Trip (5.18).  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 24 = At Set Point             | Speed reference reached (reference value   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           |                               | before the ramp corresponds to actual  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           |                               | value)   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 25 = Cur at Limit             | Armature current is being limited, value of  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 26 = Cur Reduced              | Arm Cur Max (3.04) has been reached.   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           |                               | Reduced armature current, recovery current after high current dosage.                      |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 27 = Bridge 1                 | Bridge 1 is active.  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 28 = Bridge 2                 | Bridge 2 is active.  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 29 = Field Rev                | Field reversal is active.  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 30 = Reserved                 | not used   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 31 = Reserved                 | not used   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 6.40      | 32 = Dataset 3.1              | DO is controlled by Dataset 3.1  | 0   | 20  | 2       | Tout |     |                    |
| 6.12      | DO2 Assign                    |  | 0   | 32  | 2       | Text |     |                    |
| Wizard    |                               | ent of digital output 2:   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           |                               | ntical with DO1 (6.11).  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 6.13      | DO3 Assign                    |  | 0   | 32  | 2       | Text |     |                    |
| Wizard    |                               | ent of digital output 3:   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | Assignment ide                | ntical with DO1 (6.11).  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 6.14      | DO4 Assign                    |  | 0   | 32  | 2       | Text |     |                    |
| Wizard    |                               | ent of digital output 4:   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           |                               | intical with DO1 (6.11).   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 6.15      | DO5 Assign                    |  | 0   | 32  | 2       | Text |     |                    |
|           |                               | ont of digital cutout E  | 0   | 52  | 2       | Text |     |                    |
| Wizard    |                               | ent of digital output 5:   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | (relay X98:1-2):              |  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           |                               | ntical with DO1 (6.11).  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| (1) no ch | anges nossible if             | the drive is in ON-status  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |

| ParNo. | Parameter name and significance  | Min | Max | Default | Unit | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|--------|--|-----|-----|---------|------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 6  | Input / Output (continued)   |     |     |         |      |     | Setting            |
| 6.16   | Panel Act 1<br>Selection of the desired panel display of actual<br>value 1:<br>(top left corner of display)<br>0 = Speed Act / speed actual value (5.05)<br>1 = Speed Ref / speed reference value (5.04)<br>2 = Arm Volt Act / armature voltage act. value (3.03)<br>3 = Arm Cur Ref / armature current ref. (3.01)<br>4 = Arm Cur Act / armature current act. value (3.02)<br>5 = Power Act / actual power (3.21)<br>6 = Torque Act / torque actual value<br>7 = Fld Cur Act / field current actual value (4.02)<br>8 = Al1 Act<br>9 = Al2 Act<br>10 = D14 Act  | 0   | 10  | 2       | Text |     |                    |
| 6.17   | 10 = DI1 Act<br>Panel Act 2<br>Selection of the desired panel display of actual<br>value 2:<br>(top centre of display)<br>Assignment identical with Panel Act 1 (616)  | 0   | 10  | 4       | Text |     |                    |
| 6.18   | Panel Act 3<br>Selection of the desired panel display of actual<br>value 3:<br>(top right corner of display)<br>Assignment identical with Panel Act 1 (616)  | 0   | 10  | 1       | Text |     |                    |
| 6.19   | Panel Act 4<br>Selection of the desired panel display of actual<br>value 4:<br>(bottom of display)<br>Assignment identical with Panel Act 1 (616)  | 0   | 10  | 0       | Text |     |                    |
| 6.20   | Dataset 2.2 Ass         Selection of the desired assignment for fieldbus         dataset 2.2:         0 = Speed Act / speed actual value (5.05)         1 = Speed Ref / speed reference value (5.04)         2 = Arm Volt Act / armature voltage act. value (3.03)         3 = Arm Cur Ref / armature current ref. val. (3.01)         4 = Arm Cur Act / armature current act. value (3.02)         5 = Power Act / actual power (3.21)         6 = Torque Act / torque actual value         7 = Fld Cur Act / field current actual value (4.02)         8 = Dataset 3.2         9 = Dataset 3.3         10 = Al1 Act / Analogue Input 1 actual value         11 = Al2 Act / Analogue Input 2 actual value | 0   | 11  | 0       | Text |     |                    |
| 6.21   | Dataset 2.3 Ass<br>Selection of the desired assignment for fieldbus<br>dataset 2.3:<br>Assignment identical with Dataset 2.2 Ass (620)   | 0   | 11  | 4       | Text |     |                    |

| ParNo.         | Parameter name and significance  | Min | Max | Default | Unit | (1) | custom. |
|----------------|--|-----|-----|---------|------|-----|---------|
| Grp 6          | Input / Output (continued)   |     |     |         |      |     | setting |
|                |  | 0   | 35  | 2       | Toyt |     |         |
| 6.22           | <ul> <li>MSW Bit 11 Ass</li> <li>Function assignement for bit 11 in the main fieldbus status word (2.06):</li> <li>0 = None</li> <li>1 = Constant 1</li> <li>2 = Macro depend/ dependent on the selected macro</li> <li>3 = Rdy for On / ready for switching on</li> <li>4 = Rdy for Run / ready for running</li> <li>5 = Running</li> <li>6 = Not Eme-Stop / no emergency stop</li> <li>7 = Fault</li> <li>8 = Alarm</li> <li>9 = Fit or Alarm / fault or alarm</li> <li>10 = Not (F or A) / no fault and no alarm</li> <li>11 = Main Cont On / main contactor ON</li> <li>12 = Fan On</li> <li>13 = Local / Local operation fr. the control panel/Tool</li> <li>14 = Comm Fault / communication fault</li> <li>15 = Overtemp Mot / motor overheated</li> <li>16 = Overtemp DCS / DCS overheated</li> <li>17 = Stalled / motor stalled</li> <li>18 = Forward / forward direction of rotation</li> <li>19 = Reverse / reverse direction of rotation</li> <li>20 = Zero Speed / zero speed signal</li> <li>21 = Speed L1 / speed value 1 reached (5.16)</li> <li>22 = Speed L2 / speed value 2 reached (5.17)</li> <li>23 = Overspeed / overspeed (5.18)</li> <li>24 = At Set Point / speed reference value reached</li> <li>25 = Cur at Limit / armature current is at limit</li> <li>26 = Cur Reduced / reduced armature current</li> <li>27 = Bridge 1 / bridge 1 active</li> <li>28 = Bridge 2 / bridge 2 active</li> <li>29 = Field Revers / Field reversal is active</li> <li>30 = Reserved / not used</li> <li>31 = Reserved / not used</li> <li>31 = Reserved / not used</li> <li>32 = D11 / Digital Input 1</li> <li>33 = D12 / Digital Input 2</li> <li>34 = D13 / Digital Input 4</li> </ul> | 0   | 35  | 2       | Text |     |         |
| 6.23           | <b>MSW Bit 12 Ass</b><br>Function assignment for bit 12 in the main fieldbus   | 0   | 35  | 2       | Text |     |         |
|                | status word (2.06):<br>Assignment identical with MSW Bit 11 Ass (622)  |     |     |         |      |     |         |
| 6.24           | MSW Bit 13 Ass   | 0   | 35  | 2       | Text |     |         |
|                | Function assignment for bit 13 in the main fieldbus  |     |     |         |      |     |         |
|                | status word (2.06):<br>Assignment identical with MSW Bit 11 Ass (622)  |     |     |         |      |     |         |
| 6.25           | MSW Bit 14 Ass   | 0   | 35  | 2       | Text |     |         |
| 0.25           | Function assignment for bit 14 in the main fieldbus  | 0   | 33  | 2       | TOXE |     |         |
|                | status word (2.06):  |     |     |         |      |     |         |
|                | Assignment identical with MSW Bit 11 Ass (622)   |     |     |         |      |     |         |
| 6.26           | Al1 Act  | -   | -   | -       | %    |     |         |
| Signal         | Reference display of analogue input 1  |     |     |         | 0/   |     |         |
| 6.27<br>Signal | Al2 Act<br>Reference display of analogue input 2   | -   | -   | -       | %    |     |         |
| 6.28           | DI Act   | -   | -   | -       | hex  |     |         |
| Signal         | Status display of the eight digital inputs   |     |     |         | nox  |     |         |
|                | panges possible if the drive is in ON-status   |     |     |         |      |     |         |

| ParNo.                | Parameter name and significance  | Min | Max | Default | Unit | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|-----------------------|--|-----|-----|---------|------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 7                 | Maintenance  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| <b>7.01</b><br>Wizard | Language<br>Selection of the panel language:<br>0 = English<br>1 = Deutsch<br>2 = Français<br>3 = Italiano   | 0   | 4   | 0       | Text |     |                    |
| 7.02<br>Action        | <ul> <li>4 = Español</li> <li>Contr Service</li> <li>Selection of the desired service activity:</li> <li>0 = None</li> <li>1 = Arm Autotun / armature current controller autotuning</li> <li>2 = Fld Autotun / field current controller autotuning</li> <li>3 = Flux Adapt / flux adaptation</li> <li>4 = Sp Autotun / speed controller autotuning</li> <li>5 = Arm Man Tun / manual armature current controller autotuning</li> </ul> | 0   | 7   | 0       | Text |     |                    |
|                       | <ul> <li>6 = Fld Man Tun / manual field current controller<br/>auto-tuning</li> <li>7 = Thyr Diag / thyristor diagnossis</li> </ul>  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |

| ParNo. | Parameter name and significance  | Min | Max | Default | Unit    | (1)      | custom.<br>setting |
|--------|--|-----|-----|---------|---------|----------|--------------------|
| Grp 7  | Maintenance (continued)  |     |     |         |         |          | Ŭ                  |
| 7.03   | Diagnosis  | -   | -   | -       | Text    |          |                    |
| Signal | Display of all diagnostic messages:  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | Further information see chapter 'Troubleshooting'  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 0 = none   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 110 = 110 (internal software causes)   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 11 = Tune Aborted<br>12 = No Run Cmd   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 13 = No ZeroSpeed  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 14 = Fld Cur <> 0  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 15 = Arm Cur <> 0  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 16 = Arm L Meas  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 17 = Arm R Meas  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 18 = Field L Meas<br>19 = Field R Meas   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 20 = TuneParWrite  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 21 = 21 (internal software causes)   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 22 = Tacho Adjust  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 23 = Not Running   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 24 = Not At Speed  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 25 = TachPolarity  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 26 = Enc Polarity<br>27 = No EncSignal   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 28 = StillRunning  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 29 = 29 (internal software causes)   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 30 = Wiz ParWrite  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 31 = 31 (internal software causes)   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 32 = UpDn Aborted  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 33 = NoStandstill  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | <ul> <li>34 = Par Checksum</li> <li>35 = 35 (internal software causes)</li> </ul>            |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 36 = 36 (internal software causes)   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 37 = Pan Is LOCAL  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 3869 = reserved  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 70 = Fld Low Lim   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 71 = Flux Char   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 72 = Field Range<br>73 = Arm Data  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 73 = AIII Data74 = AI2 vs PTC  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 75 = RecoveryTime  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 76 = Grp9 Disable  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 7779 = reserved  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 80 = Speed does not reach setpoint   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 81 = Motor is not accelerating   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | <ul> <li>82 = Not enough measurement for speed KP and TI</li> <li>8389 = reserved</li> </ul> |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 90 = Shortcut V11  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 91 = Shortcut V12  |     | 1   |         |         | 1        |                    |
|        | 92 = Shortcut V13  |     | 1   |         |         | 1        |                    |
|        | 93 = Shortcut V14  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 94 = Shortcut V15  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 95 = Shortcut V16<br>96 = Result False   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 96 = Result False<br>97 = ShortcV15/22   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 98 = ShortcV16/23  |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 99 = ShortcV11/24  |     | 1   |         |         | 1        |                    |
|        | 100 = ShortcV12/25   |     | 1   |         |         | 1        |                    |
|        | 101 = ShortcV13/26   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 102 = ShortcV14/21   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
|        | 103 = Ground Fault   |     |     |         |         |          |                    |
| 7.04   | 104 = NoThrConduc  |     | +   | +       | integra | ł        |                    |
| 7.04   | SW Version   | -   | -   | -       | integer |          |                    |
| Const. | Display of the software version used.  |     |     |         | · .     | <b> </b> |                    |
| 7.05   | Conv Type  | -   | -   | -       | integer |          |                    |
| Const. | Display of the converter type:   |     | 1   |         |         | 1        |                    |
|        | 0 = DCS401 (2Q)  |     | 1   |         |         | 1        |                    |
|        | 1 = DCS402 (4Q)<br>nanges possible if the drive is in ON-status                              |     |     |         |         |          |                    |

| ParNo. | Parameter name and significance  | Min | Max | Default | Unit | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|--------|--|-----|-----|---------|------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 7  | Maintenance (continued)  |     |     |         |      |     | J                  |
| 7.06   | Conv Nom Cur   | -   | -   | -       | А    |     |                    |
| Const. | Display of the converter's nominal current in amperes.   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 7.07   | Conv Nom Volt  | -   | -   | -       | V    |     |                    |
| Const. | Display of the converter's nominal voltage in volts.   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 7.08   | Volatile Alarm   | -   | -   | -       | Text |     |                    |
| Signal | Display of the last alarm.   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 7.09   | Fault Word 1   | -   | -   | -       | hex  |     |                    |
| Signal | All the pending faults are displayed if the  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | corresponding bits are set to log. "1".  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | BithexFaultdefinition00000101Aux Voltage Fault   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 01 0002 02 Hardware Fault  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 02 0004 03 Software Fault  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 03 0008 04 Par Flash Read Fault  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 04 0010 05 Compatibility Fault   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 05 0020 06 Typecode Read Fault<br>06 0040 07 Converter Overtemp  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 07 0080 08 Motor Overtemp  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 08 0100 09 Mains Undervoltage  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 09 0200 10 Mains Overvoltage   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 10040011Mains Sync Fault11080012Field Undercurrent   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 12 1000 13 Field Overcurrent   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 13 2000 14 Armature Overcurrent  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 14 4000 15 Armature Overvoltage  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 7.10   | 15         8000         16         Speed Meas Fault           Fault Word 2         Image: Contract of the second | -   | -   | -       | hex  |     |                    |
| Signal | Fault word 2. Significance of the individual bits:   | -   | -   | -       | TIEX |     |                    |
| Olghai | All the pending faults are displayed if the  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | corresponding bits are set to log. "1".  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | Bit hex Fault definition   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 00 0001 17 Tacho Polarity fault  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 01 0002 18 Overspeed   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 02000419Motor Stalled03000820Communication Fault   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 04 0010 21 Local Control Lost  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 05 0020 22 External Fault  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 06 0040 23 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 07 0080 24 -<br>08 0100 25 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 09 0200 26 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 10 0400 27 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 11 0800 28 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 12 1000 29 -<br>13 2000 30 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 14 4000 31 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 15 8000 32 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 7.11   | Fault Word 3   | -   | -   | -       | hex  |     |                    |
| Signal | Fault word 3. Significance of the individual bits:   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | All the pending faults are displayed if the  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | corresponding bits are set to log. "1".<br>Bit hex Fault definition  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 00 0001 33 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 01 0002 34 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 02 0004 35 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 03 0008 36 -<br>04 0010 37 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 05 0020 38 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 06 0040 39 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 07 0080 40 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 08 0100 41 -<br>09 0200 42 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 10 0400 43 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 11 0800 44 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 12 1000 45 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 13 2000 46 -<br>14 4000 47 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | 15 8000 48 -   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|        | enges nessible if the drive is in ON status  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |

| ParNo.                  | Parameter name and significance   | Min | Max | Default | Unit | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|-------------------------|---|-----|-----|---------|------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 7                   | Maintenance (continued)   |     |     |         |      |     | Johning            |
| Grp 7<br>7.12<br>Signal | Maintenance (continued)Alarm Word 1Alarm word 1. Significance of the individual bits:All the pending alarms are displayed if thecorresponding bits are set to log. "1".BithexAlarmdefinition00000101Parameters Added01000202Mains Voltage Low02000403Arm Circuit Break03000804001005Motor Temp High04001005Motor Temp High05002006Arm Current Reduced06004007Field Volt Limited07008008Mains Drop Out08010009Eme Stop Pending09020010Autouning Failed11080012External Alarm12100013ill Fieldbus Setting13200014Up/Download Failed14400015PanTxt Not UpToDate  | -   | -   | -       | hex  |     |                    |
|                         | 15 8000 16 Par Setting Conflict   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 7.13<br>Signal          | Alarm Word 2         Alarm word 2. Significance of the individual bits:         All the pending alarms are displayed if the         corresponding bits are set to log. "1".         Bit       hex         Alarm       definition         00       0001       17         Compatibility Alarm       01         01       0002       18         02       0004       19         03       0008       20         04       0010       21         05       0020       22         06       0040       23         07       080       24         08       0100       25         10       0400       27         11       0800       28         12       1000       29         13       2000       30         14       4000       31         15       8000       32 | -   | -   | -       | hex  |     |                    |
| 7.14<br>Signal          | Alarm Word 3         Alarm word 3. Significance of the individual bits:         All the pending alarms are displayed if the         corresponding bits are set to log. "1".         Bit       hex         Alarm       definition         00       0001       33         01       0002       34         02       0004       35         03       0008       36         04       0010       37         05       0020       38         06       0400       39         07       0080       40         08       0100       41         10       0400       43         11       0800       44         12       1000       45         13       2000       46         14       4000       47         15       8000       48                                     |     | -   | -       | hex  |     |                    |

| ParNo. | Parameter name and significance                 | Min    | Max   | Default | Unit    | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|--------|---|--------|-------|---------|---------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 7  | Maintenance (continued)                         |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
| 7.15   | Commis Ref 1                                    | -32768 | 32767 | 0       | integer |     |                    |
|        | Commissioning reference value 1                 |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Scaling:  |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Field current 0100% = 04096                     |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Torque 0100% = 04096                            |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Armature current 0100% = 04096                  |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Speed 0max = 0max rpm                           |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
| 7.16   | Commis Ref 2                                    | -32768 | 32767 | 0       | integer |     |                    |
|        | Commissioning reference value 2                 |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Scaling:  |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Field current 0100% = 04096                     |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Torque 0100%= 04096                             |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Armature current 0100% = 04096                  |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Speed 0max = 0max rpm                           |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
| 7.17   | Squarewave Per                                  | 0.01   | 60.00 | 2.00    | S       |     |                    |
|        | Duration of cycle of the square-wave generator. |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
| 7.18   | Squarewave Act                                  | -      | -     | -       | integer |     |                    |
| Signal | Actual value of the square-wave generator.      |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
| 7.19   | Pan Text Vers                                   |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
| Signal | Display of text version in the control panel    |        |       |         |         |     |                    |
| 7.20   | CPU Load  |        |       |         | %       |     |                    |
| Signal | Operating performance of CPU in %               |        |       |         |         |     |                    |

| ParNo. | Parameter name and significance  | Min | Max   | Default | Unit    | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|--------|--|-----|-------|---------|---------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 8  | Fieldbus   |     |       |         |         |     |                    |
|        | Long Parameter Menu  |     |       |         |         |     |                    |
| 8.01   | Fieldbus Par 1<br>0 = Disable<br>no communication with PLC<br>1 = Fieldbus<br>PLC communication via fieldbus adapter<br>2 = RS232-Port<br>PLC communication via RS232 Port / Modbus<br>protocol<br>3 = Panel-Port<br>PLC communication via Panel Port / Modbus | 0   | 65535 | 0       | Text    | X   |                    |
|        | protocol<br>4 = Res Fieldbus<br>Reset Fieldbus adapter parameter   |     |       |         | •       |     |                    |
| 8.02   | Fieldbus Par 2<br>further information see chapter 7  | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | х   |                    |
| 8.03   | Fieldbus Par 3<br>further information see chapter 7  | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | х   |                    |
| 8.04   | Fieldbus Par 4<br>further information see chapter 7  | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | x   |                    |
| 8.05   | Fieldbus Par 5<br>further information see chapter 7  | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | х   |                    |
| 8.06   | Fieldbus Par 6<br>further information see chapter 7  | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | x   |                    |
| 8.07   | Fieldbus Par 7<br>further information see chapter 7  | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | x   |                    |
| 8.08   | Fieldbus Par 8<br>further information see chapter 7  | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | х   |                    |
| 8.09   | Fieldbus Par 9<br>further information see chapter 7  | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | х   |                    |
| 8.10   | Fieldbus Par 10<br>further information see chapter 7   | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | х   |                    |
| 8.11   | Fieldbus Par 11<br>further information see chapter 7   | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | х   |                    |
| 8.12   | Fieldbus Par 12<br>further information see chapter 7   | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | х   |                    |
| 8.13   | Fieldbus Par 13<br>further information see chapter 7   | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | x   |                    |
| 8.14   | Fieldbus Par 14<br>further information see chapter 7   | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | x   |                    |
| 8.15   | Fieldbus Par 15<br>further information see chapter 7   | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | x   |                    |
| 8.16   | Fieldbus Par 16<br>further information see chapter 7   | 0   | 65535 | 0       | integer | х   |                    |

# For detailed description see "Fieldbus Description"

| ParNo.   | Parameter name and significance  | Min | Max | Default | Unit | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|----------|--|-----|-----|---------|------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 9    | Macro Adaptation   |     |     |         |      |     | Soung              |
| <b>·</b> | Long Parameter Menu  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 9.01     | MacParGrpAction         All parameters of group 9 (9.02 9.18) can be set to         the same value         0=unchanged       no parameters changes         1=Macro depend       set all parameters to macro depend         2=Disable       disable all parameters  | 0   | 2   | 0       | Text | x   |                    |
| 9.02     | Jog 1<br>Jog function will be controlled from a binary signal<br>which is assigned in this parameter:<br>0=Macro depend<br>1=Disable<br>2=DI1<br>3=DI2<br>4=DI3<br>5=DI4<br>State of binary signal:<br>0=no Jog 1<br>Decelerate the motor by using Jog Decel   | 0   | 5   | 0       | Text | x   |                    |
| 0.02     | Ramp (5.20) till zero speed afterwards disable<br>of current controller .<br>1=Jog 1<br>enable current controller and accelerate the<br>motor by using Jog Acel Ramp (5.19) up to<br>Fixed Speed 1 (5.13)<br>The parameter setting Jog 1 function is also controlled<br>by bit 8 of Main Control Word via serial communication<br>(OR-function).   |     | 5   |         | Tank |     |                    |
| 9.03     | Jog 2<br>Jog function will be controlled from a binary signal<br>which is assigned in this parameter.<br>Assignment identical with 9.02<br>State of binary signal:<br>0=no Jog 2<br>Decelerate the motor by using Jog Decel<br>Ramp (5.20) till zero speed afterwards disable<br>of current controller .<br>1=Jog 2<br>enable current controller and accelerate the<br>motor by using Jog Acel Ramp (5.19) up to<br>Fixed Speed 2 (5.14)<br>The Jog 2 function is also controlled by bit 9 of Main<br>Control Word via serial communication (OR-function). | 0   | 5   | 0       | Text | x   |                    |
| 9.04     | COAST<br>Coast function will be controlled from a binary signal<br>which is assigned in this parameter.<br>Assignment identical with 9.02<br>State of binary signal:<br>0=COAST<br>disable current controller, switch Main<br>Contactor Off, motor is coasting till zero<br>speed<br>1=no COAST<br>Closed-circuit principle, must be closed for<br>operation<br>The Coast function is also controlled by bit 1 of Main<br>Control Word via serial communication (AND-<br>function).  | 0   | 5   | 0       |      | x   |                    |

| ParNo. | Parameter name and significance   | Min | Max | Default | Unit | (1) | custom. |
|--------|---|-----|-----|---------|------|-----|---------|
| Grp 9  | Macro Adaptation (continued)  |     |     |         |      |     | setting |
| 9.05   | User Fault<br>Fault function will be controlled from a binary signal<br>which is assigned in this parameter:<br>0=Macro depend<br>1=Disable<br>2=DI1<br>3=DI2<br>4=DI3<br>5=DI4<br>6=MCW Bit 11<br>7=MCW Bit 12<br>8=MCW Bit 13<br>9=MCW Bit 14<br>10=MCW Bit 15  | 0   | 10  | 0       | Text | x   |         |
|        | State of binary signal:<br>0=no Fault<br>1=Fault Triggers an External Fault (F22) and<br>trips the drive  |     |     |         |      |     |         |
| 9.06   | User Fault Inv<br>Fault (inv) function will be controlled from binary signal<br>which is assigned in this parameter:<br>Assignment identical with 9.02  | 0   | 5   | 0       | Text | x   |         |
|        | State of binary signal:0=FaultTriggers an External Fault (F22) and<br>trips the drive1=no faultClosed-circuit principle, must be<br>closed for operation  |     |     |         |      |     |         |
| 9.07   | User Alarm<br>Alarm function will be controlled from binary signal<br>which is assigned in this parameter:<br>Assignment identical with 9.05  | 0   | 10  | 0       | Text | x   |         |
|        | State of binary signal:<br>0=no Alarm<br>1=Alarm Triggers an External Alarm (A12) in<br>DCS400  |     |     |         |      |     |         |
| 9.08   | User Alarm Inv<br>Alarm (inv) function will be controlled from binary<br>signal which is assigned in this parameter:<br>Assignment identical with 9.02  | 0   | 5   | 0       | Text | x   |         |
|        | State of binary signal:0=AlarmTriggers an External Alarm (A12) in<br>DCS4001=no AlarmClosed-circuit principle, must be  |     |     |         |      |     |         |
| 9.09   | closed for operation<br><b>Dir of Rotation</b><br>Direction of rotation will be controlled from binary<br>signal which is assigned in this parameter:<br><b>Assignment identical with 9.05</b><br>State of binary signal:<br>0=forward<br>1=reverse<br>Effective only when the drive is speed controlled. | 0   | 10  | 0       | Text | ×   |         |

| ParNo. | Parameter name and significance  | Min | Max | Default | Unit | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|--------|--|-----|-----|---------|------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 9  | Macro Adaptation (continued)   |     |     |         |      |     | setting            |
| 9.10   | MotPot Incr<br>MotorPot Increase speed function will be controlled<br>from a binary signal which is assigned in this<br>parameter.<br>Assignment identical with 9.05   | 0   | 10  | 0       | Text | x   |                    |
|        | State of binary signal:<br>0=hold speed<br>1=increase speed<br>accelerate speed at Acel Ramp (5.09) until<br>Max Speed (1.06)  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 9.11   | MotPot Decr<br>MotorPot Decrease speed function will be controlled<br>from a binary signal which is assigned in this<br>parameter.<br>Assignment identical with 9.05   | 0   | 10  | 0       | Text | x   |                    |
|        | State of binary signal:<br>0=hold speed<br>1=decrease speed<br>decelerate speed at Decel Ramp (5.10) until<br>zero speed respectively MotPotMinSpeed (9.12)<br>if active. MotPot Decr has precedence<br>above MotPot Incr  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 9.12   | MotPotMinSpeed<br>MotorPot minimum speed function will be controlled<br>from a binary signal which is assigned in this<br>parameter.<br>Assignment identical with 9.05   | 0   | 10  | 0       | Text | x   |                    |
|        | State of binary signal:<br>0=Start from zero.<br>MotPotMinSpeed is inactive.<br>1=Start from MotPotMinSpeed<br>activate MinimumSpeed. Speed can be<br>defined in parameter Fixed Speed 1 (5.13).<br>When the drive is started the speed will be<br>accelerated to this minimum speed and it is<br>not possible to set the speed below this<br>minimum with motor pot function.   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 9.13   | Ext Field Rev<br>External field reversal will be controlled from a binary<br>signal which is assigned in this parameter.<br>Assignment identical with 9.05   | 0   | 10  | 0       | Text | x   |                    |
|        | State of binary signal:<br>0=no field reversal<br>1=field reversal<br>External field reversal with external field<br>reversing switch. <b>Only for 2-Q application.</b><br>Depend on field reversal the signal "Field<br>reversal active" has log. state "1".<br>Field reversal is only possible when the<br>drive is OFF (DI7=0). When field reversal is<br>active the polarity of speed actual value is<br>changed in the software. It's recommended<br>to use a remanence contactor relay to store<br>the state of this relay when the main supply<br>failes. Otherwise the relay contactors can<br>burn due to the field inductance. |     |     |         |      |     |                    |

| ParNo.    | Parameter name and significance   | Min | Max | Default | Unit | (1) | custom.<br>setting |
|-----------|---|-----|-----|---------|------|-----|--------------------|
| Grp 9     | Macro Adaptation (continued)  |     |     |         |      |     | Journa             |
| 9.14      | AlternativParam<br>Alternative parameter set will be controlled from a<br>binary signal which is assigned in this parameter.<br>Assignment identical with 9.05  | 0   | 10  | 0       | Text | x   |                    |
|           | State of binary signal:<br>0= Standard parameter set for speed controller effective<br>5.07 Speed Reg KP<br>5.08 Speed Reg TI<br>5.09 Accel Ramp  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 5.10 Decel Ramp<br>1= IF Alt Par Sel (5.21) = Macro depend<br>THEN<br>alternativ parameter set for speed controller<br>effective  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | 5.22 Alt Speed KP<br>5.23 Alt Speed TI<br>5.24 Alt Accel Ramp<br>5.25 Alt Decel Ramp<br>ELSE<br>alternativ parameter set for speed controller<br>effective depending on an event selected in Alt                                |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | Par Sel (5.21)  |     |     | -       |      |     |                    |
| 9.15      | Ext Speed Lim<br>External speed limitation will be controlled from a<br>binary signal which is assigned in this parameter.<br>Assignment identical with 9.05  | 0   | 10  | 0       | Text | x   |                    |
|           | State of binary signal:<br>0=no speed limitation<br>1=speed limitation to parameter Fixed Speed 1 (5.13)  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 9.16      | Add AuxSpRef<br>Additional aux speed reference will be controlled from<br>a binary signal which is assigned in this parameter.<br>Assignment identical with 9.05  | 0   | 10  | 0       | Text | x   |                    |
|           | State of binary signal:<br>0=no additional aux. speed reference<br>1= IF Aux Sp Ref Sel (5.26) = Macro depend<br>THEN<br>value of Fixed Speed 2 (5.14) is added to<br>speed reference.  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | ELSE<br>value in Aux Sp Ref Sel (5.26) is added to<br>speed reference.  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 9.17      | Curr Lim 2 Inv<br>Second current limitation will be controlled from a<br>binary signal which is assigned in this parameter.<br>Assignment identical with 9.05   | 0   | 10  | 0       | Text | x   |                    |
|           | State of binary signal:<br>0=current limitation 2 effective (3.24 Arm Cur Lim 2)<br>1=current limitation 1 effective (3.04 Arm Cur Max)<br>Value of Arm Cur Max (3.04) has to be greater<br>than value of Arm Cur Lim 2 (3.24). |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| 9.18      | Speed/Torque<br>Speed/torque function will be controlled from a binary<br>signal which is assigned in this parameter.<br>Assignment identical with 9.05   | 0   | 10  | 0       | Text | x   |                    |
|           | State of binary signal:<br>0= drive is speed controlled<br>1= IF Cur Contr Mode (3.14) = Macro depend<br>THEN   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
|           | drive is torque controlled<br>ELSE<br>drive is controlled as selected in Cur Contr  |     |     |         |      |     |                    |
| (1) no ch | Mode (3.14)<br>nanges possible if the drive is in ON-status   |     |     |         |      |     |                    |

# 5 Installation

### General

### Incoming inspection

Check the contents of delivery

- DCS 400
- Manual
- · Mounting template
- Quick installation & commissioning guide

Check the consignment for any signs of damage. If you find any, please contact the insurance company or the supplier.

Check the particulars given on the unit's rating plate to make sure prior to installation and start-up that you have received the correct unit type and unit version.

If the consignment is incomplete or contains any incorrect items, please contact the supplier.

### **CAUTION!**

The thyristor power converter weighs quite a lot and should therefore not be held by the front cover. Please put the unit down only on its back. Always use due care when handling the unit, so as to avoid injuries or damage.

#### Storage and transport

If the unit had been in storage prior to installation or is transported to another location, care must be taken to ensure that the environmental conditions are complied with.

### **Rating plate**

For purposes of identification, each thyristor power converter is fitted with rating plates, stating the type code and the serial number, which serve for each unit's individual identification.

The type code contains information on the characteristics and the configuration of the unit.

The technical data and specifications are valid as of going to press. ABB reserves the right to make subsequent alterations.

If you have any questions concerning your drive system, please contact your local ABB agent.

# 5.1 Safety instructions

in conformity with the low-voltage directive 73/23/EEC

### 1. General

In operation, drive converters, depending on their degree of protection, may have live, uninsulated, and possibly also moving or rotating parts, as well as hot surfaces.

In case of inadmissible removal of the required covers, of improper use, wrong installation or maloperation, there is the danger of serious personal injury and damage to property.

For further information, see documentation.

All operations serving transport, installation and commissioninng as well as maintenance are to be carried out by skilled technical personnel (Observe IEC 364 or CENELEC HD 384 or DIN VDE 0100 and IEC 664 or DIN/VDE 0110 and national accident prevention rules!).

For the purposes of these basic safety instructions, "skilled technical personnel" means persons who are familiar with the installation, mounting, commissioning and operation of the product and have the qualifications needed for the performance of their functions.

### 2. Intended use

Drive converters are components designed for inclusion in electrical installations or machinery.

In case of installation in machinery, commissioning of the drive converter (i.e. the starting of normal operation) is prohibited until the machinery has been proved to conform to the provisions of the directive 89/392/EEC (Machinery Safety Directive - MSD). Account is to be taken of EN 60204.

Commissioning (i.e. the starting of normal opertion) is admissible only where conformity with the EMC directive (89/336/EEC) has been established.

The drive converters meet the requirements of the low-voltage directive 73/23/EEC. They are subject to the harmonized standards of the series prEN 50178/DIN VDE 0160 in conjunction with EN 60439-1/ VDE 0660, part 500, and EN 60146/ VDE 0558.

The technical data as well as information concerning the supply conditions shall be taken from the rating plate and from the documentation and shall be strictly observed.

### 3. Transport, storage

The instructions for transport, storage and proper use shall be complied with.

The climatic conditions shall be in conformity with prEN 50178.

### 4. Installation

The installation and cooling of the appliances shall be in accordance with the specifications in the pertinent documentation.

The drive converters shall be protected against excessive strains. In particular, no components must be bent or isolating distances altered in the course of transportation or handling. No contact shall be made with electronic components and contacts.

Drive converters contain electrostatic sensitive components which are liable to damage through improper use. Electric components must not be mechanically damaged or destroyed (potential health risks).

### 5. Electrical connection

When working on live drive converters, the applicable national accident prevention rules (e.g. VBG 4) must be complied with. The electrical installation shall be carried out in accordance with the relevant requirements (e.g. cross-sectional areas of conductors, fusing, PE connection). For further information, see documentation.

Instructions for the installation in accordance with EMC requirements, like screening, earthing, location of filters and wiring, are contained in the drive converter documentation. They must always be complied with, also for drive converters bearing a CE marking. Observance of the limit values required by EMC law is the responsibility of the manufacturer of the installation or machine.

### 6. Operation

Installations which include drive converters shall be equipped with additional control and protective devices in accordance with the relevant applicable safety requirements, e.g. Act respecting technical equipment, accident prevention rules etc. Changes to the drive converters by means of the operating software are admissible.

After disconnection of the drive converter from the voltage supply, live appliance parts and power terminals must not be touched immediately because of possibly energized capacitors. In this respect, the corresponding signs and markings on the drive converter must be respected.

During operation, all covers and doors shall be kept closed.

### 7. Maintenance and servicing

The manufacturer's documentation shall be followed.

**KEEP SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS IN A SAFE PLACE!** 

### Warnings

Warnings provide information on states which if the specified procedure for the state concerned is not meticulously complied with may result in a serious error, in major damage to the unit, in injury to persons and even in death. They are identified by the following symbols:



This symbol warns you of high voltages which may result in injuries to persons and/or damage to equipment. Where appropriate, the text printed adjacent to this symbol describes how risks of this kind may be avoided.

- All electrical installation and maintenance work on the thyristor power converter must be carried out by properly qualified staff who have been thoroughly trained in electrical engineering.
- The thyristor power converter and its adjacent units must be properly earthed by qualified professionals.
- You must NEVER perform any work on the thyristor power converter while it is still switched on. First switch the unit off, use a measuring instrument to make absolutely sure that the power converter has really been de-energized, and only then you may start with the work concerned.
- Due to external control circuits, there may be dangerously high voltages present at the thyristor power converter even after the line voltage has been switched off. So always work at the unit with appropriate caution! Non-compliance with these instructions may result in injury (or even death!).



This symbol warns you of non-electrical risks and dangers which may result in serious or even fatal injury to persons and/or in damage to equipment. Where appropriate, the text printed adjacent to this symbol describes how risks of this kind may be avoided.

- When thyristor power converters are in use, the electric motors, power transmission elements and the driven machines are working in an extended operating range, which means they have to cope with a relatively high loading.
  - You should have made sure that all units, devices and appliances used are actually suitable for this higher loading.
  - If you have to operate the thyristor power converter at a rated motor voltage and/or a rated motor current significantly below the figures stated in the thyristor power converter's output data, you must take appropriate precautionary measures to protect the unit against overspeed, overload, breakage, etc., by modifying the software or hardware appropriately.
  - For insulation testing, you must disconnect all cables from the thyristor power converter. You should avoid operating your unit at values other than the rated data. Non-compliance with these instructions may cause lasting damage to the thyristor power converter.

• The thyristor power converter possesses a number of automatic reset functions. When these functions are executed, the unit will be reset after an error and will then resume operation. These functions should not be used if other units and devices are not suitable for an operating mode of this kind, or if their use might entail dangerous situations.



Warning of electrostatic discharge:

This symbol warns you against electrostatic discharges which may damage the unit. Where appropriate, the text printed next to this symbol describes how a risk of this kind may be avoided.

### Notes

Notes supply information on states requiring particular attention, or indicate that additional information is available on a specific topic. For this purpose, the following symbols are used:

### **CAUTION!**

**Cautions** are designed to draw your attention to a particular state of affairs.

### Note

A **note** contains or refers you to additional information available on the particular topic concerned.

### Mains connection

You can use a switch disconnector (with fuses) in the power supply of the thyristor power converter to disconnect the electrical components of the unit from the power supply for installation and maintenance work. The type of disconnector used must be a switch disconnector as per EN 60947-3, Class B, so as to comply with EU regulations, or a circuit-breaker type which switches off the load circuit by means of an auxiliary contact causing the breaker's main contacts to open. The mains disconnector must be locked in its "OPEN" position during any installation and maintenance work.

### **EMERGENCY STOP buttons**

EMERGENCY STOP buttons must be installed at each control desk and at all other control panels requiring an emergency stop function.

### Intended use

The operating instructions cannot take into consideration every possible case of configuration, operation or maintenance. Thus, they mainly give such advice only, which is required by qualified personnel for normal operation of the machines and devices in industrial installations.

If in special cases the electrical machines and devices are intended for use in non-industrial installations - which may require stricter safety regulations (e.g. protection against contact by children or similar) -, these additional safety measures for the installation must be provided by the customer during assembly.

#### Remark

This is the content of the manual Installation of converters for armature and field supply in accordance with EMC with the original chapter-numbering! Converters and the major part of the devices, which constitute a DC drive, cannot fulfil the EMC requirements independently from each other. They must be installed and connected by skilled people according to this guide. This restriction is related to the expression "restricted area" in the short description of EN 61800-3 which is the EMC standard for a power drive system.

## EN 61800-3

**EMC** standard for **Power Drive Systems** (PDS), immunity and emission in domestic, residential and light industry restricted area and in industry.

This standard must be complied with to meet the EMC requirements for plants and machines in the EC!

If the DC drive is designed and built-up according to this installation guide then it meets the requirements of EN 61800-3 and of the following standards:

| EN 50082-2 | Generic standard for noise im- |             |  |
|------------|--------------------------------|-------------|--|
|            | munity in                      |             |  |
|            | industrial                     | environment |  |
|            | (includes EN 50082-1, domestic |             |  |
|            | environ.)                      |             |  |
|            |                                |             |  |

EN 50081-2 Generic standard for noise emission in

### industrial environment

**EN 50081-1** Generic standard for noise emission in

**domestic environment,** can be fulfilled with special means (line filters, screened power cables) in the lower power range

NOTE!

The conformity procedure is a matter of responsibility of ABB Industrietechnik GmbH and of the machine manufacturers or the plant builders corresponding to their share of the extension of the electrical equipment.

# Definitions

Earth, earthing for safety

Ground, grounding for EMC, connection with mass or housing with low inductance



Important instructions for plants with line filters

### Filter in an earthed line (TN or TT network)

The filters are suitable for earthed lines only, for example in public European 400 V lines. According to EN 61800-3, filters are not compatible in insulated

### General

industrial lines with own supply transformers due to their safety risks in such floating lines (IT networks).

### Earth fault detection

Filters (with internal discharging resistors), cables, the converter and the motor have together a considerable capacity to ground which can cause an increased capacitive earth current. The tripping threshold of an earth fault detector which measures this current must be adapted to this higher value.

### High voltage test

Because of the capacitors of the line filter the high voltage test has to be done with dc voltage to protect the components.



# Warning

Line filters contain capacitors which can keep dangerous voltages at the terminals after the switch off of the mains voltage. The discharge by internal resistors takes some seconds. Therefore a waiting time of **at least 10 s** and a voltage check are obligatory before you begin your work at the equipment.



### General safety instructions

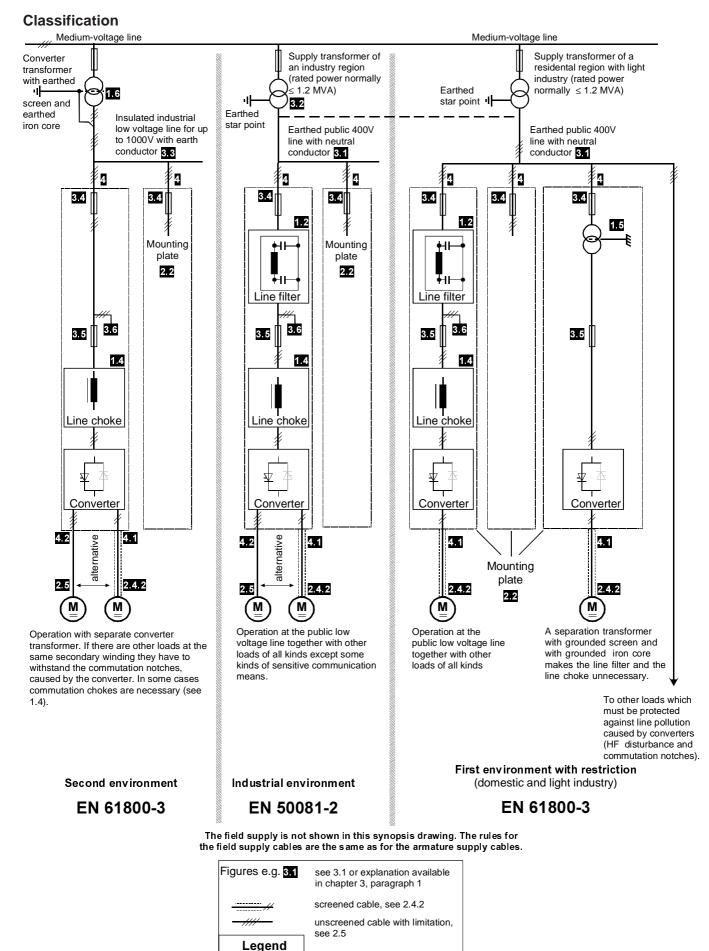
Electrical machines or devices are items of equipment used in industrial power installations. During operation, parts of this equipment are live and bare, or moving, rotating, etc. These parts may cause great material damage and serious heavy injuries, if, for instance, their covers are removed or if they are not properly used or operated.

- It must therefore be ensured that
- only qualified experts perform work at these machines and devices,
- these persons always have available among other things - the operating instructions and other product-specific documentation supplied along when performing work, and are obliged to meet the requirements laid down in these documents,
- non-qualified persons are not authorized to perform any work at or near these machines and devices.

The operating instructions cannot take into consideration every possible case of configuration, operation or maintenance. Thus, they mainly give such advice only, which is required by qualified personnel for normal operation of the machines and devices in industrial installations.

If in special cases the electrical machines and devices are intended for use in non-industrial installations which may require stricter safety regulations (e.g. protection against contact by children or similar) -, these additional safety measures must be carried out by the customer during assembly.

Earth connections must be made according to IEC 364!



II K 5-5

# 1.2 Three - phase filters

EMC filters are necessary to fulfill EN 50081 if a converter shall be run at a public low voltage line, in Europe for example with 400 V between the phases. Such lines have an earthed neutral conductor. ABB offers suitable three - phase filters for 400 V and 25 A....600 A and 500 V filters for 440 V lines outside Europe (see separate filter documentation).

Lines with 500 V to 1000 V are not public. They are local lines inside factories, and they do not supply sensitive electronics. Therefore converters do not need EMC filters if they shall run with 500 V and more (see also 1.6).

# 1.3 Single - phase filters for field supply

Many field supply units are single - phase converters for up to 50 A excitation current. They can be supplied by two of the three input phases of the armature supply converter. Then a field supply unit does not need an own filter as shown at the connection example (chapter 4).

If the phase voltage to the neutral conductor shall be taken (230 V in a 400 V line) then a separate filter is necessary as shown below. ABB offers such filters for 250 V and 6...30 A (see the specific converter documentation).

| L1<br>L2<br>L3 | 3-PH FILTER | ]= |  | $\mathbb{H}$ |  |
|----------------|-------------|----|--|--------------|--|
| N              | 1-PH FILTER |    |  | $\mathbf{k}$ |  |

# **1.4** Commutation and line chokes

Converters cause short-duration short circuits at their AC inputs, so - called commutation notches. Such notches down to 0 V (100% depth) can be accepted at the secondary windings of converter transformers (operation without commutation chokes). However, their depth must be reduced if more than two converters of comparable power shall be supplied by the same transformer. Then commutation chokes are necessary. They must cause about 1% relative voltage drop at rated current. So - called 1% chokes are also necessary if the power of the converter is very low compared with the available power of the transformer or supply line. ABB offers suitable 1% chokes (see separate documentation).

According to the European standard EN 50178, §A6, the commutation notches must be kept below 20% of the line voltage if the line is public. This target can be achieved with the aid of line chokes. The inductance of these chokes must have 4 times the value of the network inductance at the converter's connection point. Therefore in many cases so-called 4% chokes are necessary, and therefore ABB offers also suitable 4% line chokes besides the 1% chokes (see separate documentation).

Due to the maximum power of public 400 V transformers

 $(P_{MAX} = 1.2 \text{ MVA} \Rightarrow I_{MAX} = 1732 \text{ A})$  and due to their relative voltage drop 6% or 4% the maximum AC current which is available for a converter is 346 A or 520 A ( $I_{DC} \leq 422 \text{ A}$  or 633 A).

Often the maximum current is not limited by the transformer but by the power cable to the industry region. Therefore it is necessary to ask the energy supply company concerning the line impedance and the current which is available at the desired connection point of the converter.

## 1.5 Separation transformers

A separation transformer makes line chokes unnecessary because of its leakage inductance, and a grounded screen between its windings saves an EMC filter, see1.1 and 1.4. The screen and the iron core must be well connected with the mounting plate of the converter. If the transformer is located outside the converter cubicle the screen of a screened 3-phase cable ("first" environment, page 2 at the right) or a ground cable ("second" environment, page 2 at the left) must make this connection (see chapter 4 "Connection example").

# 1.6 Converter transformers

A converter transformer transfers high power directly from a medium voltage line to a single large converter or to a local low voltage line for several converters (see 3.3). Furthermore it acts as separation transformer according to 1.5.

If such a converter transformer has no screen the EMC demands are nevertheless fulfilled in most cases because the RF interference energy can hardly get via the medium-voltage line and the transformer of the public line to the loads which must be protected against pertubances. In the case of a dispute a measurement must be done at the point of coupling (public low - voltage line) according to EN 61 800-3.

# 2 Installation hints

# 2.1 Cabinets

All metal cubicles available on the market can be used, however, their mounting plates must have well conducting surfaces according to 2.2.

If a drive system is placed in more than one cubicle their mounting plates must be connected by broad pieces of well conducting sheet metal.

# 2.2 Mounting plate

The mounting plate must be made from steel with zinc surfaces and without any painting. It shall be connected with the PE copper bar by several bolts distributed in equal distances along the bar.

# 2.3 Placement of devices

The converter, the line choke, fuses, contactors and the EMC filter are to be placed on the mounting plate so that the connections can be made as short as possible, especially those from the converter via the line choke to the filter, and that point 2.6 can be fulfilled. The surface of the components to be mounted to the mounting plate has to be free of coating material.

# 2.4 Screening

# 2.4.1 Signal cables

The cables for digital signals which are longer than 3m and all cables for analogue signals must be screened. Each screen must be connected at **both** ends by metal clamps or comparable means directly on clean metal surfaces, if both earthing points belong to the same earth line. Otherwise a capacitor must be connected to earth on one end. In the converter cubicle this kind of connection must be made directly on the sheet metal close to the terminals (see 4.3) and if the cable comes from outside also on the PE bar (see 4.1 and 4.2). At the other end of the cable the screen must be well connected with the housing of the signal emitter or receiver.

### 2.4.2 Power cables with screens

Power cables with screens are necessary, if they run over long distances (>20 m) where they are susceptible to EMC environmental conditions. The cable may have e.g. either a braided or spiral screen made preferably of copper or aluminium. The transfer impedance  $Z_{\tau}$  of the power cable must be less than 0.1  $\Omega$ /m in the frequency range up to 100 MHz, in order to ensure an effective reduction of emission and a significant increase of immunity. The screen must be pressed by a well conducting metal clamp directly against the mounting plate or the PE bar of the converter cubicle (see 4). There the contact surface shall be clean and as large as possible. The PE wire can be connected with a normal cable socket at the PE bar.

Screened cables to the armature and to the excitation winding cause the lowest noise level.

# 2.5 Power cables without screens

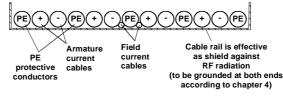
If a screen is not necessary (see 2.4.2) the armature current cable must be a four-wire cable because two wires are needed as conductors for the parasitic RF currents



from the motor to the RF filter in the cubicle. The unscreened field current cable **F** must be installed directly along the armature cable **A**. A 2-wire cable is sufficient.

The arrangement according to 4.2 has been tested with a 20 m long motor cable with the result that the conducted emission requirements are fulfilled.

If the connections to the armature are made from single-wire cables, especially if n parallel wires are necessary for higher currents, then n+1 PE cables must be arranged together with them on a cable rail as shown in principal by the following drawing with n=4.



# 2.6 Placement of cables within the cabinet

All power cables which are directly connected with the converter (U1, V1, W1, C1, D1) must either be screened or be kept close together and close to the mounting plate and separate from all other cables (L1, L2, L3 included) and especially from unscreened signal cables. A recommended separation possibility is to place these power cables at the rear side of the mounting plate. If direct crossings of "polluted" cables and others, especially signal cables, are inevitable then they must be made rectangular.

# 2.7 Placement of cables outside the cabinet

The power cables must be arranged parallel and close together, see drawings in section 2.5. The speed feedback must be screened and placed directly along the power cables to the motor if the housing of the tacho machine is electrically connected with the housing of the motor. If the housing of the tachometer or the encoder is insulated from the motor then a distance between the power and signal cables is advantageous.

# **3 Others**

# 3.1 Earthed public low voltage lines

The rated voltages of a public European low voltage line are 400 V between the 3 phases and 230 V between a phase and the neutral conductor. These voltages are provided by a transformer with its 3phase secondary winding in star connection. The star point is connected with the neutral conductor and it is earthed at the transformer station. The electrical power is distributed by 4-wire cables to the electricity consumers. At a cable stub to a consumer, the neutral conductor must be earthed (local earth of the house or plant), and then it is splitted into a neutral and a PE conductor. Therefore a 3-phase load with neutral conductor must be supplied by a 5-wire cable. Converters, however, are 3-phase loads which do not need the neutral conductor in most cases. They can be supplied by 4-wire cables as shown in the drawing 1.1. The change from the earthed neutral conductor outside the house, plant or factory to the internal PE conductor with the local earthing point between is not shown in this drawing. See also chapter 4. Power limitation: see end of 1.4!

# 3.2 Public low voltage lines in industrial regions

In an industrial region the noise level which is caused by converters is allowed to be 10 dB higher than in a residential region with included light industry. Therefore the protection targets concerning EMC can be met without screened motor cables if these cables are configurated according to 2.5.

A public low voltage line of an industrial region may have an own supply transformer as shown in the drawing 1.1, but often the lines of an industrial region and of a residential one are supplied by a common transformer. This depends on the power consumption of both regions and their distance. Power limitation: see end of 1.4!

The version with only one transformer, the right one in the drawing 1.1, is indicated by the dashed line between the lines of both regions. This dashed line represents a power cable from the transformer at the right to the industrial region at the left.

The power cable is important also for the EMC. Due to its length it reduces the noise level by at least 10 dB from the industrial to the residential region.

### 3.3 Industrial low voltage lines

Industrial low voltage lines are local lines in plants or factories. They have own supply transformers (see 1.6). In most cases they are insulated (IT network/no earthed star point) and their voltages are often higher than 400 V. The loads tolerate higher noise levels. Therefore and because industrial lines are decoupled from public lines by their transformers and distances converters do not need EMC filters at industrial lowvoltage lines (see 1.6). Problems for other loads at the same line caused by commutation notches can be solved with the aid of commutation chokes (see 1.4).

II K 5-8

Insulated lines must have also an earth conductor. The earth conductor is important for the feedback of parasitic RF noise currents from the DC motor via the converter to the earth point of the supply transformer of the line. Without such a conducted feedback the loop of the parasitic RF noise current is closed via the earth with the result that roving parts of this current can interfere electronical equipment far away from the drive.

# 3.4 Fuses at the stubs from the low voltage line

At the stubs the cross sections of the conductors become lower than in the main cable. Therefore fuses are prescribed which are adapted to the reduced cross section, and they must be located close to the stubs. This principle must be repeated at each reduction of the cross section from the stub at the main cable via the distribution net in a house or factory down to the connection point of a converter. The resulting fuse hierarchy is not shown in the drawing 1.1. Only the fuses of the lowest rank are mentioned. They are indicated at the top of the converter units. However, if the distance to the stub is too long the fuses must be located at the stub and not at the converter unit. This is the base for the connection example at the beginning of chapter 4.

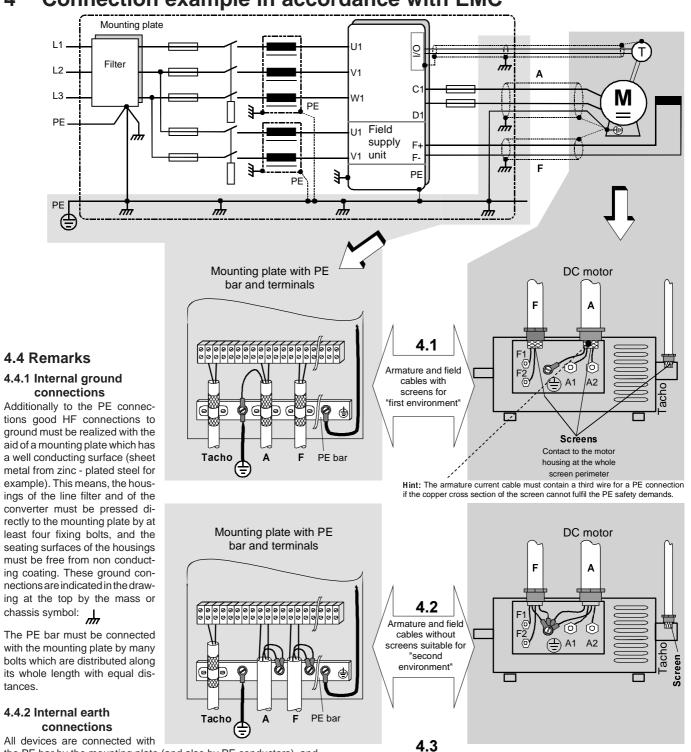
### 3.5 Fast fuses

The converters are protected against overload by their control systems. Therefore dangerous overcurrents can be caused only by faults in the converters themselves or in the loads. In such cases the thyristors can be protected only with the aid of special fast fuses. Such fast fuses are shown directly at the AC connection points of the converters as well in the drawing 1.1 as with more details in the connection example at the beginning of chapter 4. But fast fuses outside the converters are necessary only for units of the lower power range. Larger converters comprise the fast semiconductor fuses.

### 3.6 Stub for auxiliary devices

Examples for auxiliary devices: field supply converters, transformers, fan motors.

### Connection example in accordance with EMC 4



the PE bar by the mounting plate (and also by PE conductors), and the PE bar is earthed via the PE conductor of the 3-phase power cable.

# 4.4.3 External earth connections (=)

tances.

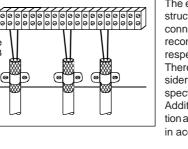
The drive shall be earthed only by the earth conductor of the line lower edge cable, see 4.4.2. An additional local earthing, especially at the motor, of the PCB raises the level of the RF noise on the line cable. carrier

### 4.4.4 Earth connections between motor and driven machine

The earth of a grounded driven machine must be connected to the earth of the driving motor, in order to avoid floating potential.

# Encoder inputs and

analogue I/O at the PCB



# **5 Important hint**

The example shows the principle structure of a DC drive and its connections. It is a not binding recommendation, and it cannot respect all conditions of a plant. Therefore each drive must be considered separately and with respect to the special application. Additionally the general installation and safety rules must be taken in account.

Ϋ́

2

400V 50Hz

115...230V 50Hz z

Remark

Ξ

# 5.3.1 Connection example for digital and analogue coupling of a PLC

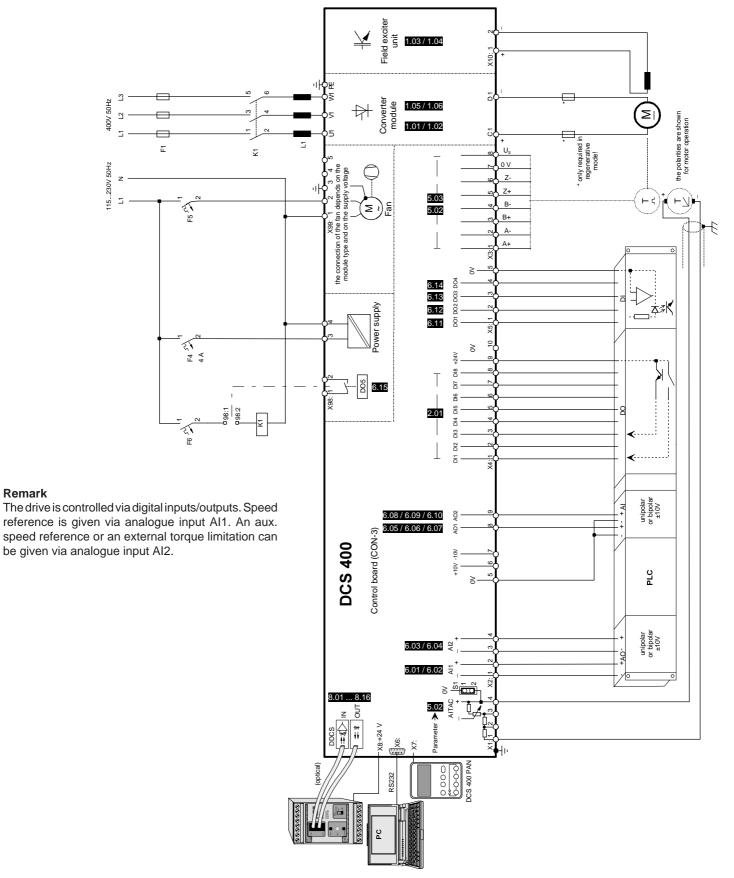


Fig. 5.3/1: Connection example for digital and analogue coupling of a PLC

## 5.3.2 Connection example for serial communication of a PLC

Remark

connected.

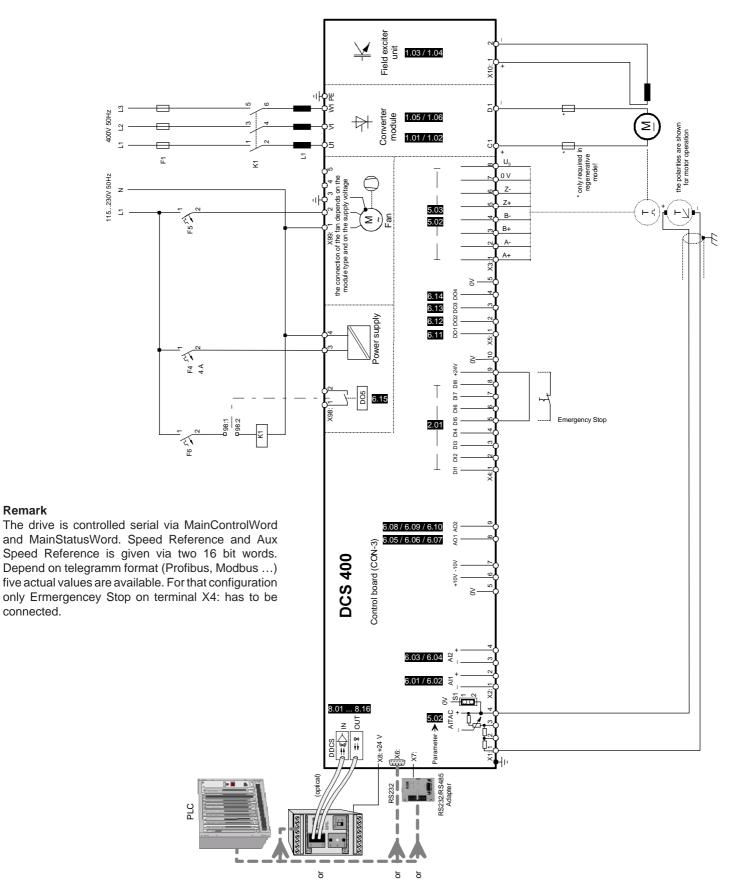
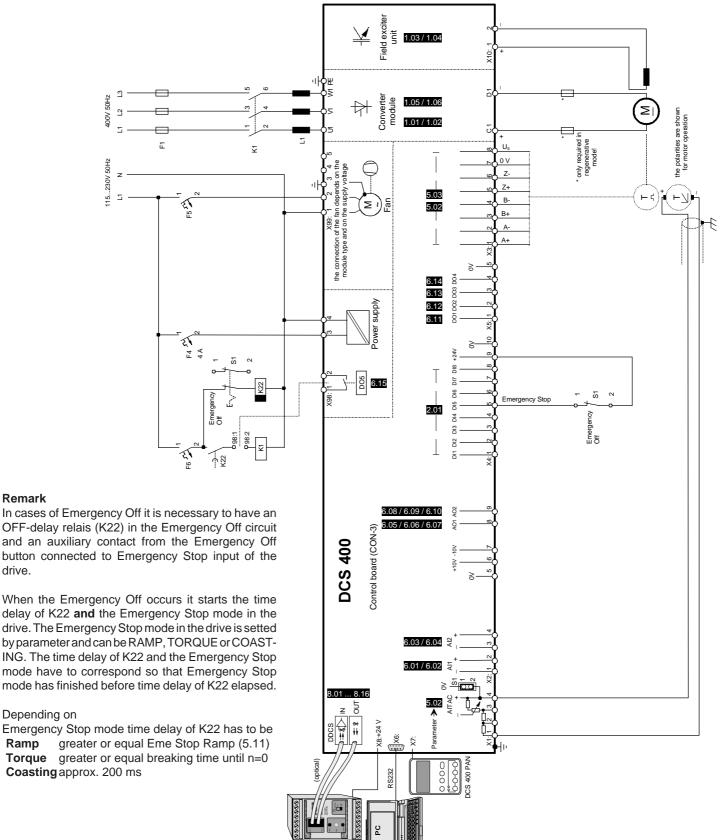


Fig. 5.3/2: Connection example for a serial communication of a PLC



5.3.3 Connection example for Emergeny Off (valid for all macros) General situation

Fig. 5.3/3: Connection example for Emergeny Off - General situation

II K 5-12

Remark

drive.

Depending on

Ramp

5.3.4 Connection example with DC breaker and controlled deceleration

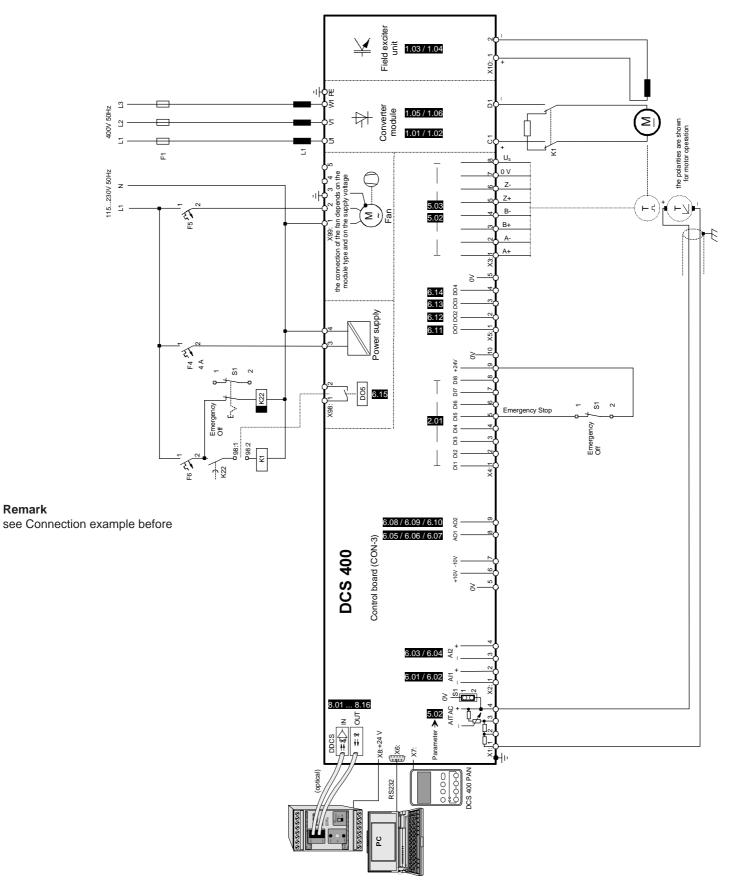


Fig. 5.3/4: Connection example with DC breaker and controlled deceleration

Remark

# 5.3.5 Connection example with DC breaker and drive coasting

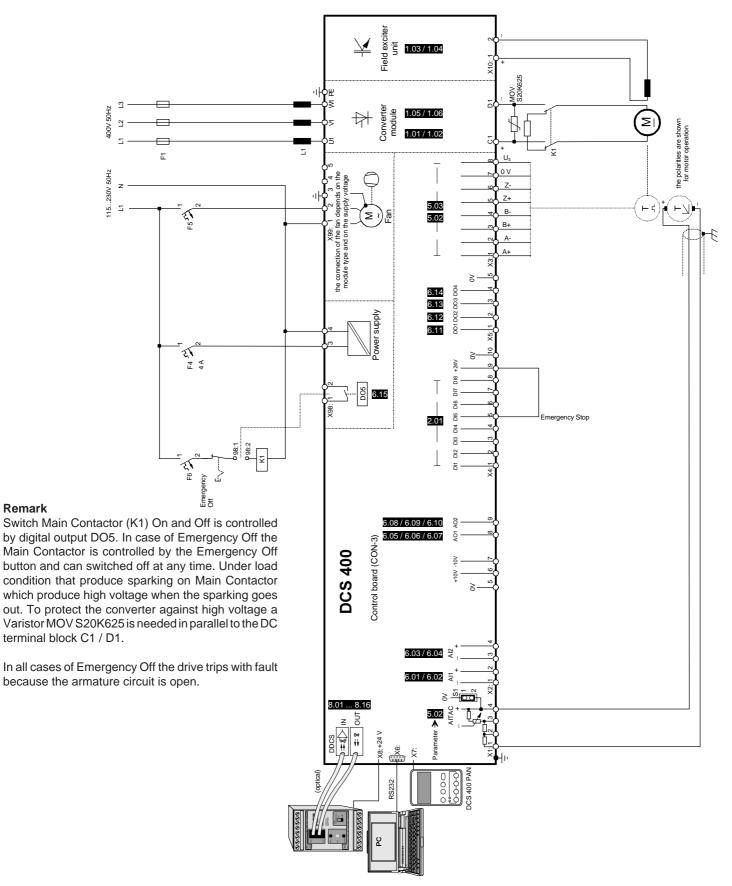


Fig. 5.3/5: Connection example for Emergeny Stop - DC breaker with drive coasting

II K 5-14

Remark

# 6 Operating Instructions

#### General

This manual is designed to help those responsible for planning, installing, start-up and servicing the thyristor power converter.

These people should possess:

- basic knowledge of physics and electrical engineering, electrical wiring principles, components and symbols used in electrical engineering, and
- · basic experience with DC drives and products.

### **CAUTION!**

To avoid unintentional operating states, or to shut the unit down in case of any imminent danger according to the standards in the safety instructions it is not sufficient to merely shut down the drive via signals 'RUN', drive 'OFF' or 'Emergency Stop' respectively 'control panel' or 'PC tool'.

### **Operating panel DCS 400 PAN**

The Control and Display Panel is used for parameter setting, for feedback value measuring and for drive control with series DCS 400 thyristor power converters.

### Panel link

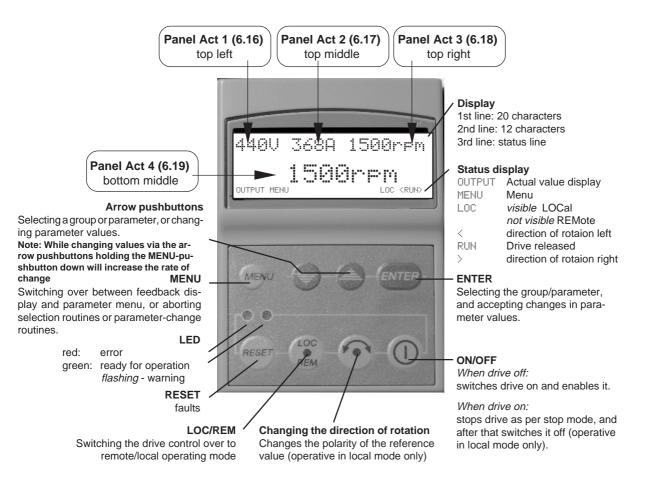
The DCS 400 PAN is connected to the drive via a serial interface and is removable under power.

### Initialization

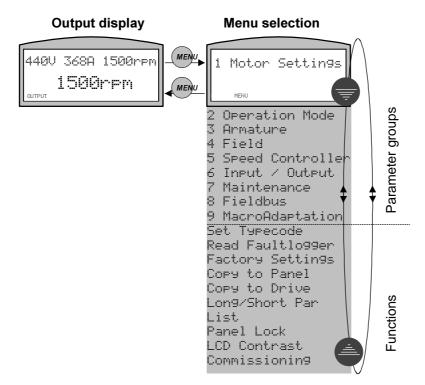
After switch on electronics supply the panel shows actual values immediately.

### **OUPUT** display

The panel display can show up to four actual values. Three values at the first line and one at the second line. For individual display it is possible to arrange these in any order via Parameter **Panel Act 1...4**.



# Panel mode: Menu selection



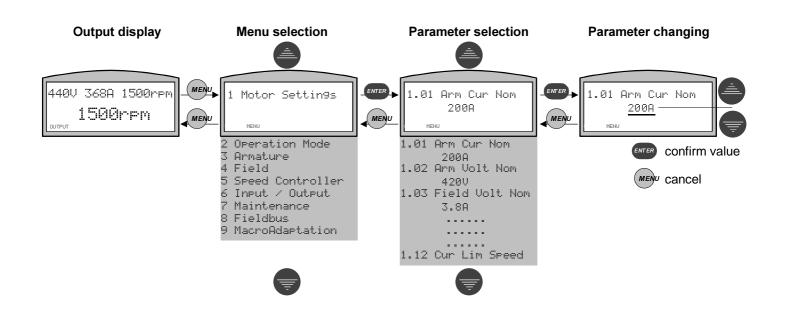
If **OUTPUT** is indicated in the status line of the panel display, press the *wey* key to change over to menu selection. The menu selection mode allows you to access the parameter groups as well as the functions available.

After pressing the wey key, menu item **1 Motor Settings** will always be displayed.

Using the e keys, the list shown above can be scrolled endlessly.

To effectively select a specific menu item displayed, confirm the selection by pressing every. The display will then switch to the menu item selected.

# Panel mode: Parameter programming



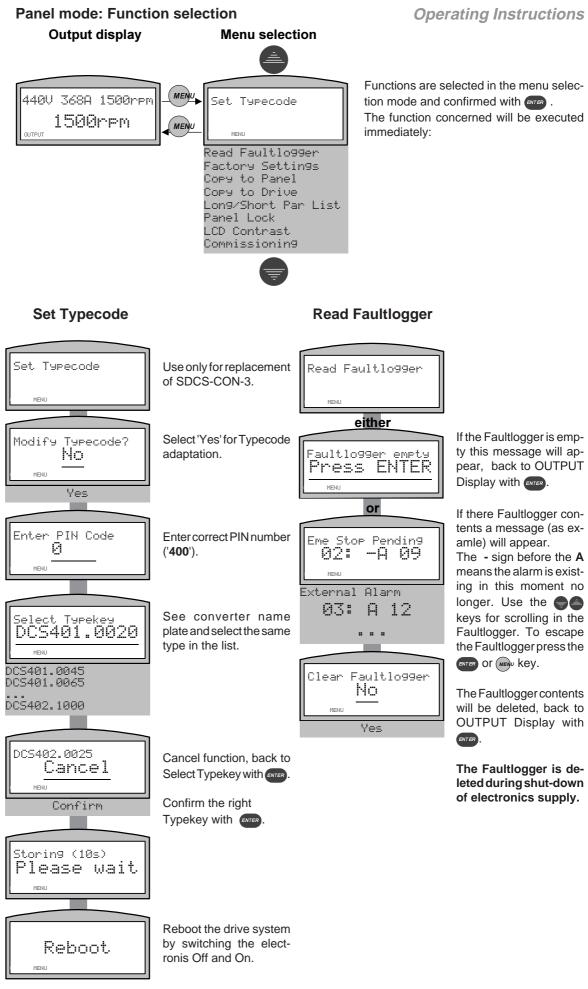
The first nine menu items or parameter groups are used for setting the drive parameters.

To access the desired parameter group, select the group concerned using the scrolling functions and confirm by pressing (we). The display now switches to the parameter selection level. To access a parameter from this group, select and confirm the parameter concerned as described above for the parameter group. The number, name and underlined value of the parameter selected is now displayed.

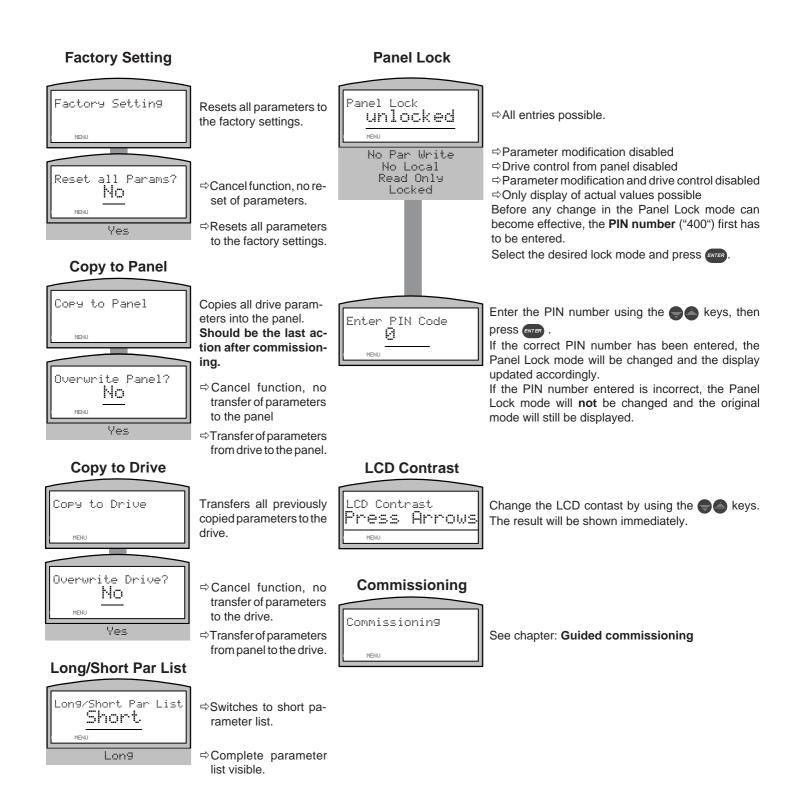
Only the underlined values can be changed with the keys. To confirm a changed value, press evers. If you want to preserve the original value, confirm this by pressing the very key. Pressing very key will return you to the parameter selection level.

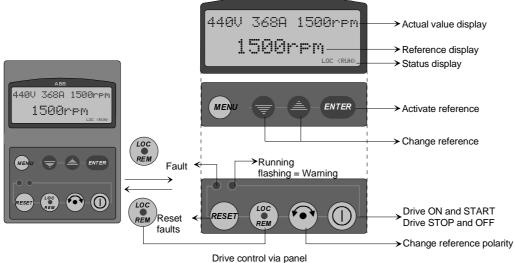
Further parameters within the same group can be selected directly. To switch to a different parameter group, first press the (abc) key to return to the menu selection level, then select the next group using the experimentary keys, etc.

Don't forget to upload parameters into the panel.



II K 6-4





LOC = local (Panel) REM = remote (Terminals/Fieldbus Adapter)

# Drive control from the panel

# CAUTION: Appropriate safety precautions must be taken before starting the drive.

Before the drive can be controlled from the panel, the panel first must be given permission to take control. The panel's ability to control the drive is determined by the **Panel Lock** function which can be accessed through menu selection and by the **LOC/REM** key provided on the panel. The Panel Lock mode must be set to **unlocked** or **no par write**, since all other entries will **prevent** the panel from taking control of the drive. The LOC/REM key is used to actually transfer control to the panel. This is then signaled by the LOC status indication in the status line. Pressing the key once again will cause the panel to give up its command of the drive, and the LOC indication in the status line will disappear.

### Actual value display

In the first line of the panel display, the actual values selected with the parameters Panel Act 1 (6.16) to Panel Act 3 (6.18) are indicated. The desired actual values have to be defined before-hand with these parameters. When the drive is being controlled from the panel, the actual values are continually updated.

### **Reference display**

In this line, the speed reference set by means of the UP/DOWN keys is displayed.

### Status display

LOC in the status line indicates that the drive is being controlled from the panel.

RUN in der status line indicates that the drive is switched on and enabled.

### Activate reference

Any modification of a reference value has to be initiated by pressing the ENTER key, which will result in the reference value displayed being <u>underlined</u>. The desired reference value is then set using the UP/DOWN keys. The new reference value will only become effective after the ENTER key is pressed once again. The <u>underline</u> then disappears.

# Change reference

A reference value can be changed only when it is displayed with an underline. Using the UP/DOWN keys, you can set any speed reference between 0 rpm and the maximum speed defined with the parameter Max Speed (1.06). Only positive speed references are set, since the reference's polarity can be changed by pressing the appropriate key.

# Drive ON and START, Drive OFF and STOP

# CAUTION: Appropriate safety precautions must be taken before starting the drive.

The function of this key is dependent on the current drive status. If the drive is in the OFF state, pressing this key will switch ON the line contactor and enable the controller. The drive will the accelerate in accordance with the preset ramp time (5.09) up to the selected speed reference.

If the drive is in the ON state, pressing this key will stop the drive. The drive will then decelerate in accordance with the preset stop mode (2.03) and ramp time (5.10, if activated) and will switch OFF the line contactor.

### Change reference polarity

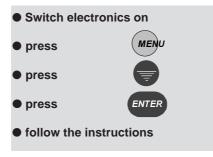
The polarity of the speed reference indicated in the reference display can be changed by pressing this key. The motor will first decelerate and then accelerate - only in 4Q applications - in the reverse direction.

### Reset (Fault acknowledgement)

All faults detected by the converter can be reset by simply pressing this key, provided that the faults concerned are no longer active. The DCS 400 converters of ABB offer the possibility to have a guided commissioning by means of **interactive dialogue** through the parameter programming. One guarantees with it, that the drive is set up right and is optimized. This section describes the **guided commissioning** with the panel. The necessary dialogue, also Panel Wizard named, is used by the command sequence shown below.

|           | ABB  |           |  |  |
|-----------|------|-----------|--|--|
| 4400      | 368A | 1500rpm   |  |  |
| 1500rpm   |      |           |  |  |
| OUTPUT ME |      | LOC (RUN) |  |  |
|           |      |           |  |  |
| MENU      | -    | È – ENTER |  |  |
|           | LOC  |           |  |  |
| RESET     | REM  |           |  |  |

Start the guided commissioning:



# CAUTION!

To avoid unintentional operating states, or to shut the unit down in case of any imminent danger according to the standards in the safety instructions it is not sufficient to merely shut down the drive via signals 'RUN', drive 'OFF' or 'Emergency Stop' respectively 'control panel' or 'PC tool'.

# The following conventions apply for the commissioning procedure:



Aborts the commissioning procedure or returns you to the previous step. Pressing MENU will always stop a running machine.



Scrolls downward through selection parameters or decrements value parameters.



Scrolls upward through selection parameters or increments value parameters.



Confirms an entry and takes you to the next step of the commissioning procedure, or confirms MENU.

### **Parameter entries**

The entries required during the guided commissioning procedure are divided into selection parameters and value parameters.

**Selection parameters** are selected from a predefined text list and confirmed.

The control panel display only shows one line of this text list at a time. Therefore, the list must be scrolled line by line, using the keys. To confirm a selection, press even.

### **Panel display**

| 2.01 Macro Select<br>Standard  |
|--|
| MENU LOC   |
| Man/Const Sp<br>Hand/Auto<br>Hand/MotPot<br>Jo99in9<br>Motor Pot<br>ext Field Rev<br>Torque Ctrl |
|  |
| Armature Autotunin97   |

Line 1: Parameter number and parameter name. Line 2: Line currently selected in the text list.

In the commissioning instructions, alternative lines of a text list are displayed against a grey-shaded background.

Select the desired line using the easier keys.

Confirm your selection by pressing [MTR] .



Yes/No decisions are treated in the same manner as selection parameters.

Value parameters are parameters with numerical contents, whose values can be incremented or decremented by pressing the selected parameter by 1.

Holding down one of these keys will cause the parameter value concerned to be increased or decreased rapidly.

Confirm the desired values by pressing ENTER .

1.02 Arm Volt Nom 400U

Line 1: Parameter number and parameter name. Line 2: Parameter value.

During the guided commissioning procedure, all values which can be changed are displayed with an underline. Use the skeys to change the values and confirm the entry by pressing enter . This will take you to the next step of the commissioning procedure.

| $\sim$ |        |              |
|--------|--------|--------------|
| E-     | it Wiz | and          |
|        | Ster   |              |
|        | MENU   | LOC          |
|        |        | tinue<br>xit |

Interrupting the guided commissioning procedure The guided commissioning procedure can be interrupted by pressing *w*. There are three posibilities for selection for going on the process.

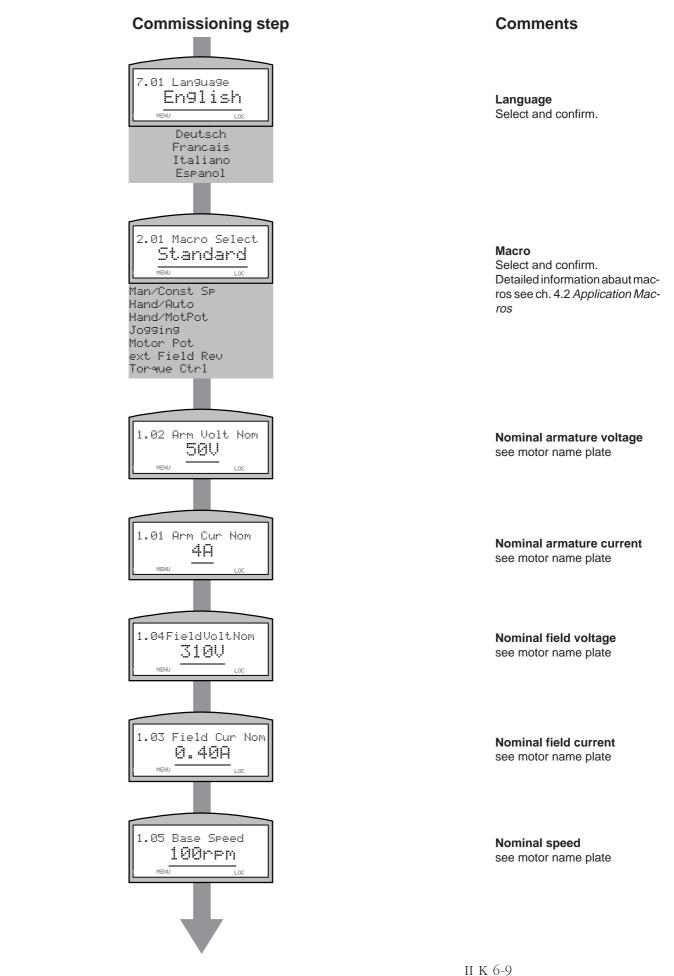
⇒One **step back** in commissioning procedure.

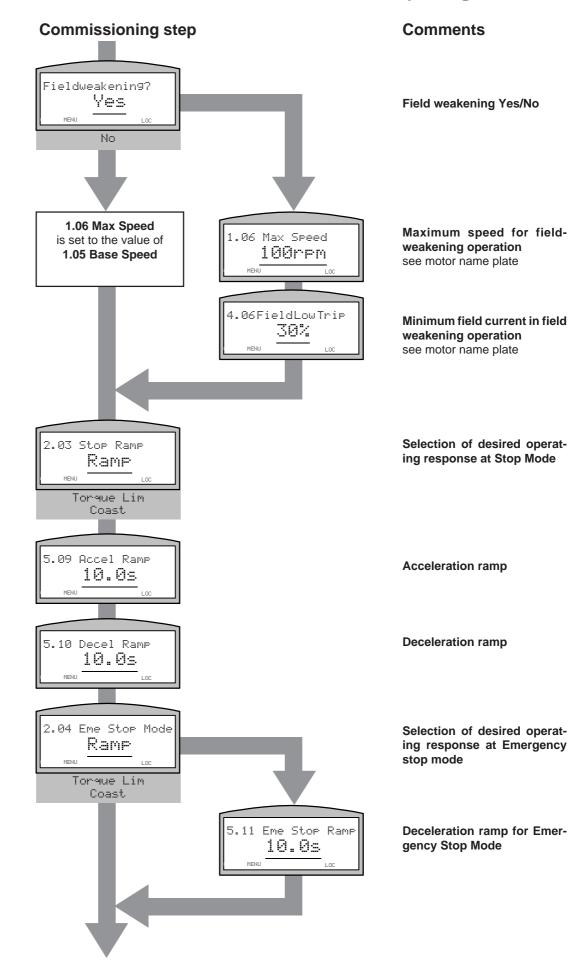
⇒**Continue** with the same step. ⇒**Exit** guided commission procedure.

Confirm your selection by pressing [NTER].

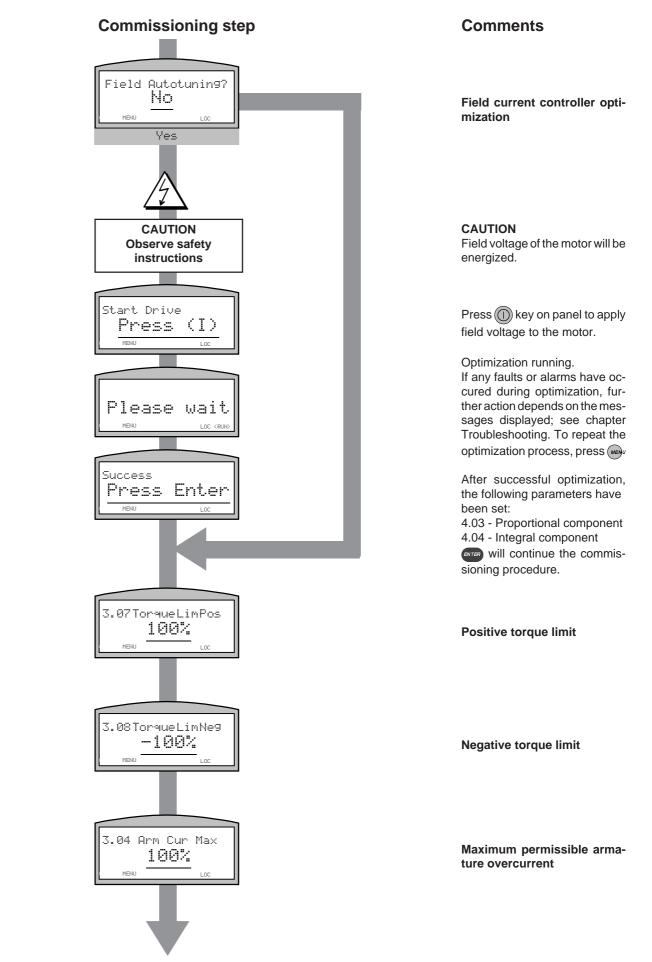
# Start of guided commissioning







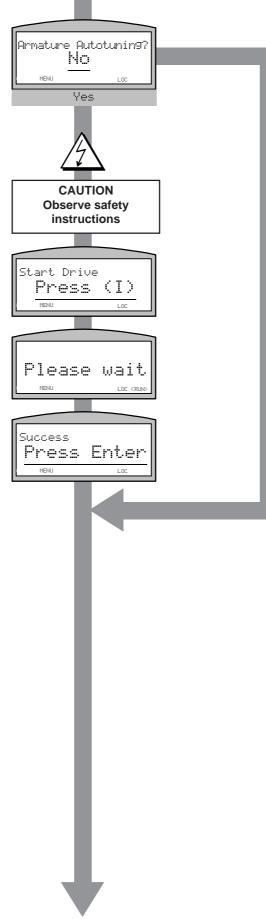




II K 6-11

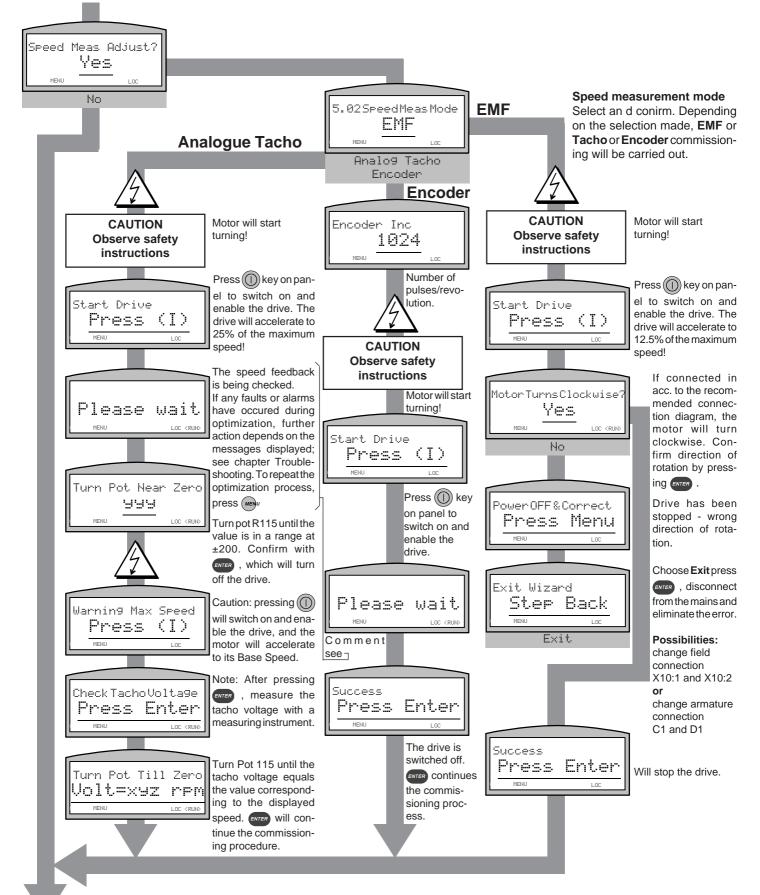
Comments

# Commissioning step



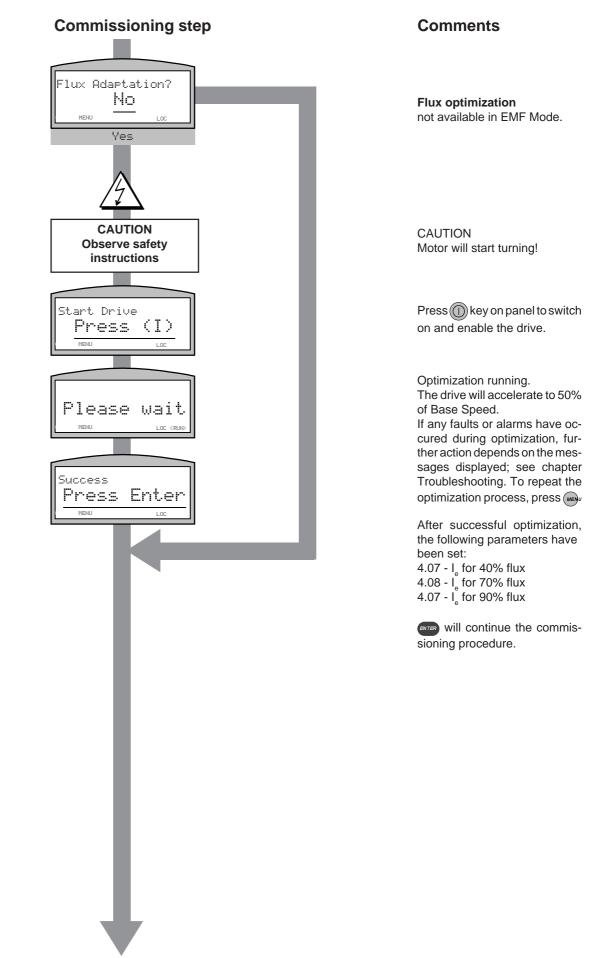
| Armature current controller optimization   |
|--|
| <b>CAUTION</b><br>Motor will be energized.   |
| Press () key on panel to apply field voltage armature voltage to the motor.  |
| Optimization running.<br>If any faults or alarms have oc-<br>cured during optimization, fur-<br>ther action depends on the mes-<br>sages displayed; see chapter<br>Troubleshooting. To repeat the<br>optimization process, press   |
| After successful optimization,<br>the following parameters have<br>been set:<br>3.09 - Proportional component<br>3.10 - Integral component<br>3.11 - Limit for continuous<br>current flow<br>3.12 - Armature inductance<br>3.13 - Armature resistance<br>will continue the commis-<br>sioning procedure. |

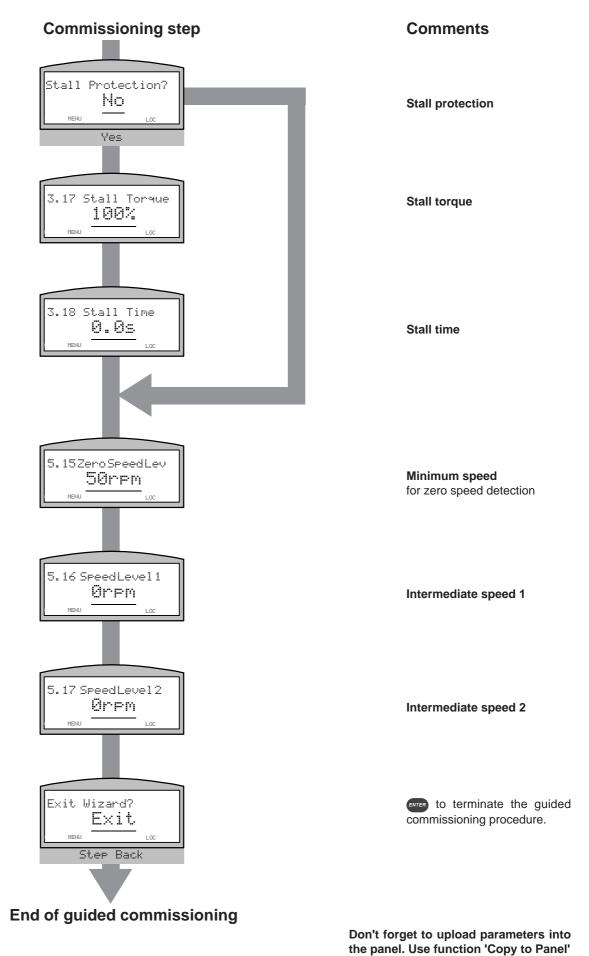
### **Commissioning step**



# **Commissioning step Comments** Speed Autotuning? No Speed controller optimization Select and confirm. Yes CAUTION CAUTION **Observe safety** Motor will start turning! instructions Press key on panel to switch Start Drive Press (I)on and enable the drive. MEN Optimization running. The drive will accelerate twice to 80% of Base Speed. Please wait If any faults or alarms have occured during optimization, further action depends on the messages displayed; see chapter Troubleshooting. To repeat the Success optimization process, press (ME) Press Enter After successful optimization, the following parameters have been set: 5.07 - Proportional component 5.08 - Integral component ENTER will continue the commissioning procedure.

### **Operating Instructions**





II K 6-16

# Manually commissioning

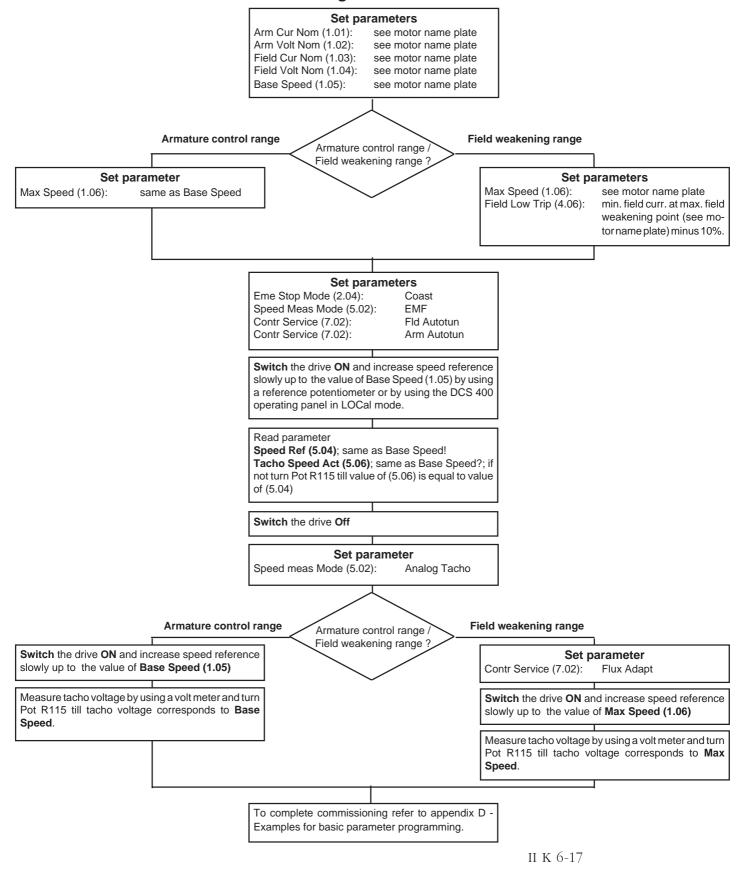
**Short description** for manual commissioning a DCS400 via control panel.

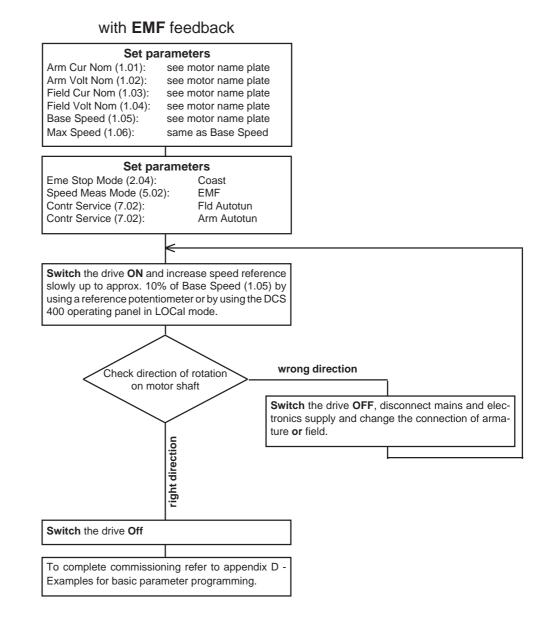
Follow this guide if panel commissioning wizard has failed.

Valid for software version 106.0 and higher.

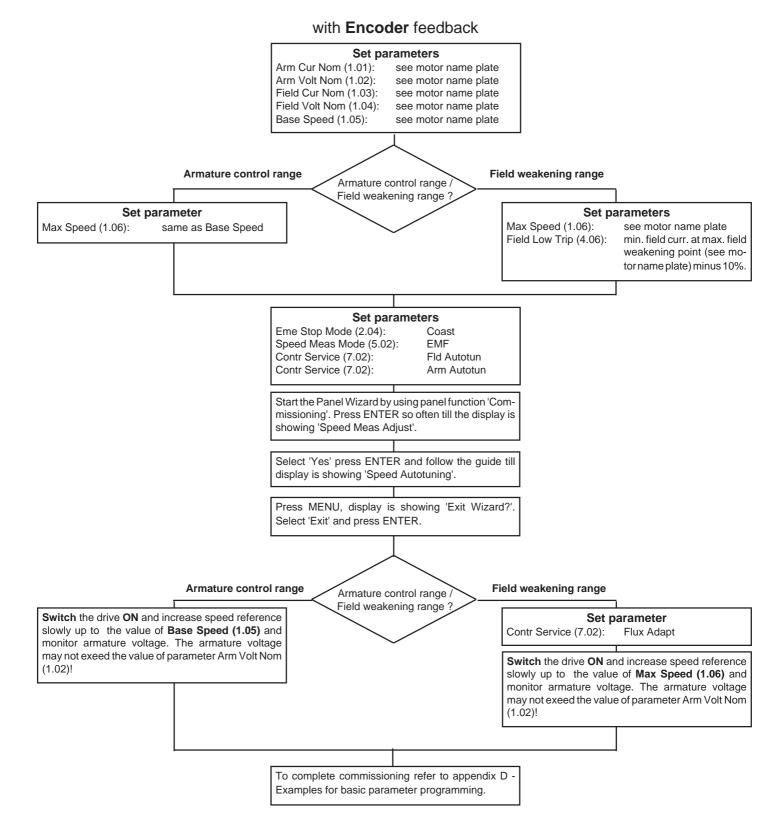
In the following charts the main structure of the different commissioning steps refering to the speed measurement are given. For the specific information related to the parameters and panel handling see the corresponding chapters.

#### with Analogue Tacho feedback





#### II K 6-18



# 6.3.1 Display of status, alarm and fault signals

The available signals (messages) for thyristor power converters series DCS 400 are subdivided into five categories:



seven segment display of the control board SDCS-CON-3.

The general messages will only be shown on the

|   | Panel Text<br>DCS400PAN | Definition                                      | Remark |
|---|-------------------------|---|--------|
| 8.  | Comm Loss               | Program is not running                          | (1)    |
| -   | normal output display   | Normal situation, no fault / no<br>alarm signal |        |
| <ul> <li>(1) Visible for short time during boot up.</li> <li>Visible during Boot mode of Firmware Download Program.</li> <li>Units should be switched off. Please check jumper S4=3-4 and S5=5-6 and switch on electrically; if fault occurs again, the PCB SDCS-CON-3 has to be checked and if necessary to be changed.</li> </ul> |                         |   |        |

#### 6.3.3 Starting errors (E)

6.3.2 General messages

The starting errors will only be shown on the seven segment display of the control board SDCS-CON-3. With starting errors it will not be possible to start the drive.

|              | Panel Text<br>DCS400PAN  | Definition                                 | Remark |  |  |
|--------------|--|--|--------|--|--|
| E1           | COMM LOSS  | Internal FPROM checksum error              | (1)    |  |  |
| E2           | COMM LOSS  | Reserved for External FPROM checksum error | (1)    |  |  |
| E3           | COMM LOSS  | Internal error in even address of ROM      | (1)    |  |  |
| E4           | COMM LOSS  | Internal error in odd address of ROM       | (1)    |  |  |
| E5           | COMM LOSS  | Reserved                                   | (1)    |  |  |
| E6           | COMM LOSS  | Software hold by watchdog func-<br>tion    | (1)    |  |  |
| 1 <b>`</b> ' | (1) Units should be switched off and on electrically; if fault occurs again please contact local ABB service center. |  |        |  |  |

In addition to the seven segment display, the LCD of the control panel DCS 400 PAN will be able to show the fault and alarm signals as well as the diagnostic messages as clear text.

A seven segment display on the control board SDCS-CON-3 of the thyristor power converters se-

ries DCS 400 is used to show general messages,

starting errors, fault and alarm signals. The signals

(messages) are displayed as codes. If the codes

consist of several parts, the characters/individual

F 14 = Armature Overcurrent

digits will be indicated respectively e.g.:

∜

 $\Rightarrow$ 

 $\leftarrow$ 

€

Note: The languages available for display as text depend on Parameter 7.01.

FAULT WORD1 [7.09] FAULT WORD2 [7.10] FAULT WORD3 [7.11] ALARM WORD1 [7.12] ALARM WORD2 [7.13] ALARM WORD3 [7.14]

contain several fault and alarm signals as a binary code. For subsequent evaluation the information is available via serial interfaces using parameter transmission.

Last alarm signal is coded as an individual error code in the location **VOLATILE ALARM** [7.08].

Also a Faultlogger is available where the last 16 faults and alarms occured are stored. Read the messages by using panel function 'Read Faultlogger' or using the PC tool 'Drives Window Light' to recognize the fault and alarm history.

#### 6.3.4 Fault Signals (F)

The fault signals will be shown on the seven segment display of the control board SDCS-CON-3 as codes F.. as well as on the LCD of the control panel DCS 400 PAN as plain text.

All fault signals - with the exception of F1 to F6 - can be reset (after elimination of the fault cause).

Note: "F1" , "Fault 1" and "F01" are equivalent

For resetting (RESET) of fault signals the following steps are required:

- Switching off the commands ON/OFF and RUN
- Elimination of the fault causes
- Fault acknowledgement, i.e. resetting (RESET)
  - a) press "RESET" key on DCS400PAN
    - or b) by setting of the RESET digital input (DI6) for at least 100ms to high (logical 1)
    - or c) if a Fieldbus is selected by setting the "RESET" bit in the Main Control Word to "high" for at least 100ms.
- Depending on the application conditions generate the commands ON/OFF and RUN once more.

All faults will switch off the signal energizing the main contactor.

|     | Fault message<br>Fault no. | Definition /<br>Possible source  | Param.        |
|-----|----------------------------|--|---------------|
| F 1 | Aux Voltage Fault          | Auxiliary Voltage Fault<br>(Not implemented yet)   | 7.09<br>bit 0 |
| F 2 | Hardware Fault             | Hardware Fault<br>Something is wrong with<br>FlashProm or thyristor diagnosis<br>has detected a short circuit.   | 7.09<br>bit 1 |
| F 3 | Software Fault             | Software Fault<br>There may be an internal error in<br>software.<br>If this fault occurs please read<br>out Parameter 7.03 Diagnosis<br>and 7.04 SW Version from the<br>control panel for use to contact<br>ABB local service center.  | 7.09<br>bit 2 |
| F 4 | Par Flash Read Fault       | Parameters Flash Read Fault<br>While booting up the soft-<br>ware. The parameter checksum<br>in the Flash is incorrect.<br>A possible problem cause is that<br>the power supply was switched<br>off during storage of parameters.<br>In this case all parameters are<br>set back to their default values.<br>If you have uploaded the para-<br>meters for your application to the<br>control panel before, please<br>download them to the drive<br>again. Otherwise you have to set<br>all parameters again. | 7.09<br>bit 3 |
| F 5 | Compatibility Fault        | Compatibility Fault<br>Software or Typecode was<br>changed to a version that is not<br>compatible with the parameters<br>which have been stored in the<br>Flash memory of the drive (e.g.<br>min/max check).<br>Some parameters may have<br>been set back to default value.<br>You can look up from parameter<br>7.03 Diagnosis the number of<br>the last of the concerned para-<br>meters.  | 7.09<br>bit 4 |
| F 6 | Typecode Read Fault        | Typecode Read Fault<br>The nominal data of the conver-<br>ter was found incorrect during<br>boot up (checksum error).<br>FlashProm broken or power<br>supply shut down during 'Set<br>Typecode' function. Try to cor-<br>rect the Typecode again.<br>Please contact ABB local ser-<br>vice center to have your type-<br>code correctly programmed.   | 7.09<br>bit 5 |

|      | Fault message<br>Fault no.                                     | Definition /<br>Possible source  | Param.        |      | Fault message<br>Fault no.               | Definition /<br>Possible source   | Param.         |
|------|--|--|---------------|------|--|---|----------------|
| F7   | Converter Overtemp<br>see also <b>A4</b>                       | Converter Over Temperature<br>Temperature of the converter too<br>high.<br>Please wait until the temperature<br>of the converter has cooled<br>down. After that you can clear<br>the fault by pressing the <b>Reset</b><br>button on the control panel.<br>Please check:<br>• fan supply<br>• fan components<br>• air inlet<br>• ambient temperature   | 7.09<br>bit 6 | F 11 | Mains Sync Fault<br>see also <b>A8</b>   | <ul> <li>Mains Synchronization Fault The synchronization to the mains frequency has been lost during operation. Possible problems causes: <ul> <li>Problems with the connection of the cable or with the main contactor</li> <li>Blown fuses</li> <li>Mains frequency out of range (4763 Hz)</li> <li>Mains frequency not stable or varying too fast</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   | 7.09<br>bit 10 |
| F 8  | Motor Overtemp<br>see also <b>A5</b>                           | <ul> <li>load cycle too high?</li> <li>Motor Over Temperature         Temperature of the motor too         high (if PTC resistor connected         to Al2).     </li> <li>Please wait until the motor has         cooled down. If you have any         digital output assigned to "Fan         On" this output will be energized         until the temperature drops be-         low the alarm level. After that         you can clear the fault by pres-         sing the Reset button on control         panel.         Please check     </li> </ul> | 7.09<br>bit 7 | F 12 | Field Undercurrent<br>see also <b>A8</b> | Field Undercurrent<br>Field current lower than the level<br>for safe operation that was set in<br>Parameter Field Low Trip<br>(4.06).<br>Please check connections of the<br>field circuit.<br>Maybe parameter Field Cur KP<br>(4.03) too high.<br>Check also that field current in<br>field weakening range is higher<br>than value of Parameter Field<br>Low Trip (4.06).<br>Read the faultlogger - may be<br>Mains Undervoltage before?                                     | 7.09<br>bit 11 |
|      |  | <ul> <li>temperature sensor and its cabling</li> <li>motor cooling fan supply direction of rotation filter</li> <li>load cycle too high?</li> </ul>  |               | F 13 | Field Overcurrent                        | Field Overcurrent<br>Field current has reached a limit<br>(Parameter Field Ov Cur Trip<br>(4.05)) that could damage the<br>motor.<br>Please check<br>• the field related parameters   | 7.09<br>bit 12 |
| F 9  | Mains Undervoltage<br>see also <b>A2</b><br>see also <b>A8</b> | Mains UndervoltageThe actual mains voltage is toolow for safe operation.Please check• all incoming fusesmeasure the voltage level ofnetworkcompare with the value from theformulaUnet $\geq$ Ua / (1,35 x cos alpha)cos alpha: 4Q = 30° = 0,8662Q = 15° = 0,9664Q: Unet $\geq$ Ua / (1,35 x 0,866)2Q: Unet $\geq$ Ua / (1,35 x 0,966)  | 7.09<br>bit 8 | F 14 | Armature<br>Overcurrent                  | <ul> <li>the resistance of the field</li> <li>connections of the field</li> <li>insulation level of cable and<br/>field winding</li> <li>Armature Overcurrent</li> <li>Armature current higher than<br/>value of Parameter 3.04 Arma-<br/>ture current max . The problem<br/>can be caused by a short circuit<br/>in the armature circuit or a thyri-<br/>stor is defective.</li> <li>Please switch off the drive and<br/>check</li> <li>measure the resistance of</li> </ul> | 7.09<br>bit 13 |
| F 10 | Mains Overvoltage  | Mains Overvoltage         The mains voltage is higher than         120% of the rated converter         voltage. This limit is fixed.         Please switch off the drive and         measure the mains voltage.  | 7.09<br>bit 9 |      |  | <ul> <li>armature</li> <li>all connections in the armature circuit</li> <li>function of all thyristors</li> <li>parameters of the Current<br/>Controller (Group 3) for instability.</li> </ul>  |                |

|      | Fault message<br>Fault no. | Definition /<br>Possible source  | Param.         |      | Fault message<br>Fault no.           | Definition /<br>Possible source  | Param.                         |
|------|----------------------------|--|----------------|------|--------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| F 15 | Armature<br>Overvoltage    | <ul> <li>Armature Overvoltage The voltage of the armature has grown higher than the value in Parameter Arm Overv Trip (1.09). Possible problems: <ul> <li>Too low fault level set (consider voltage overshoots) or wrong nominal motor voltage</li> <li>Too high field current, maybe problems with field weakening (see field parameters)</li> <li>Overshoot or instability of speed/armature current controller</li> </ul></li></ul> | 7.09<br>bit 14 | F 19 | Motor Stalled                        | <ul> <li>Motor Stalled</li> <li>Motor not turning at zero speed</li> <li>level (Parameter Zero Speed</li> <li>Lev (5.15)) with actual torque</li> <li>higher than the torque limit (Parameter Stall Torque (3.17)) for</li> <li>a time longer than the limiting</li> <li>time (Parameter Stall Time</li> <li>(3.18)).</li> <li>Please check</li> <li>all mechanical couplings of</li> <li>the motor</li> <li>the proper condition of load</li> <li>current/torque limitation</li> <li>parameter settings (Group 3)</li> <li>Communication Fault</li> </ul> | 7.10<br>bit 2                  |
| F 16 | Speed Meas Fault           | Overspeed     Speed Measurement Fault     The comparison of the speed     feed back signal from the tacho     generator or pulse encoder has     failed or overflow of analogue     input AITAC.     Please check     all connections of tacho ge-     nerator or     pulse encoder     encoder supply     converter connections - ar-     mature ciruit open?   | 7.09<br>bit 15 |      | see also A11                         | if command location Parameter<br>2.02 is set to "Fieldbus". Fieldbus<br>communication errors appear if<br>no messages have been recei-<br>ved for longer than the time<br>which is set in Parameter Comm<br>Fault Time (2.08) . If command<br>location is not "Fieldbus" Alarm<br>11 appears instead.<br>Please check the connection of<br>Fieldbus cable and check the<br>function of all Fieldbus devices<br>according to the values in Para-<br>meter Group 8   | bit 3                          |
| F 17 | Tacho Polarity Fault       | <ul> <li>Tacho Polarity Fault</li> <li>Polarity of feed back signal from tacho generator incorrect.</li> <li>Please check</li> <li>the polarity of tacho generator cable</li> <li>polarity of armature and field cable</li> <li>direction sense of rotation of the motor</li> </ul>  | 7.10<br>bit 0  | F 21 | Local Control Lost<br>External Fault | Local Control Lost<br>During operation in Local control<br>mode no message has been re-<br>ceived for a time longer than the<br>value that has been set in Para-<br>meter Comm Fault Time (2.08).<br>Please check the connection of<br>the Control panel.<br>External Fault<br>This fault can be set by the cu-  | 7.10<br>bit 4<br>7.10<br>bit 5 |
| F 18 | Overspeed                  | <ul> <li>Overspeed</li> <li>The actual speed of motor too<br/>high.</li> <li>Possible causes:</li> <li>Running in torque/current<br/>controlled mode instead of<br/>speed controlled.</li> <li>Speed regulator parameters<br/>are not correct (overshoot or<br/>instability, see Parameter<br/>Group 5)</li> <li>Motor driven by external<br/>load.</li> </ul>   | 7.10<br>bit 1  |      | see also <b>A12</b>                  | stomer via one of the digital input<br>if the selected macro offers this<br>function. There is no problem<br>with the drive itself!<br>In case of problems please check<br>the logical level and the connec-<br>tion of the circuit that is connec-<br>ted to the related digital input.   |                                |

#### 6.3.5 Alarm Signals (A)

The alarm signals will be shown on the seven segment display of the control board SDCS-CON-3 as codes A.. as well as on the LCD of the control panel DCS 400 PAN as clear text. Alarm signals will only be displayed, if there is no fault signal active.

The alarm signals with the exception of **A9 (Emergency Stop)** do not cause the drive to stop.

|     | Alarm message<br>Alarm no.                | Definition /<br>Possible source  | Param.        |
|-----|---|--|---------------|
| A 1 | Parameters Added                          | Alarm Parameters Added<br>A new software version was<br>downloaded that contains more<br>parameters than the old soft-<br>ware . These new parameters<br>have been set to their default<br>values. The last one of them is<br>showing by its number in Pa-<br>rameter <b>7.03 Diagnosis</b> .<br>Please check the new parame-<br>ters and, if you intend to use<br>them please set them to desired<br>value. Also please update the<br>text of your control panel by us-<br>ing a service program or contact<br>your local <b>ABB service center</b> . | 7.12<br>bit 0 |
| A 2 | Mains Voltage Low<br>see also <b>F9</b>   | Alarm Mains Voltage Low<br>The main voltage has droped<br>down to 5% (fix) higher than the<br>level which causes F9.<br>Please check the level of main<br>voltage.   | 7.12<br>bit 1 |
| A 3 | Arm Circuit Break                         | Alarm Armature Circuit Break<br>The armature reference is not<br>equal to zero but the actual ar-<br>mature current stays at zero<br>level for sometime.<br>Please check all connections<br>and fuses of the armature cir-<br>cuit.  | 7.12<br>bit 2 |
| A 4 | Converter Temp High<br>see also <b>F7</b> | Alarm Converter Temperature<br>High<br>The Temperature of the con-<br>verter has reached a value that<br>is 5°C lower than the level which<br>causes F7 fault.<br>Please check the correct opera-<br>tion of the converter fan and the<br>load conditions.   | 7.12<br>bit 3 |
| A 5 | Motor Temp High<br>see also <b>F8</b>     | Alarm Motor Temperature<br>High<br>The temperature of the motor is<br>too high (if PTC resistor is con-<br>nected to Al2.<br>Please check the correct opera-<br>tion of the motor fan and the<br>load conditions.  | 7.12<br>bit 4 |
| A 6 | Arm Current<br>Reduced                    | Alarm Armature Current Re-<br>duce<br>The drive is equipped with an I <sup>2</sup> t<br>protection for the motor. This<br>alarm is issued while this pro-<br>tection function forces the ar-<br>mature current down to the<br>specified recovery level (see<br>description of I <sup>2</sup> t protection after<br>the specified overload time Pa-<br>rameter <b>Overload Time (3.05)</b> ).<br>Please check the suitable load<br>cycle for your motor.  | 7.12<br>bit 5 |

|      | Alarm message<br>Alarm no. | Definition /<br>Possible source  | Param.        |      | Alarm message<br>Alarm no.            | Definition /<br>Possible source   | Param.         |
|------|----------------------------|--|---------------|------|---------------------------------------|---|----------------|
| A 7  | Field Volt Limited         | Alarm Field Voltage at Limit<br>This alarm is issued if the field<br>voltage reaches the value that<br>was set in Parameter Field Volt<br>Nom (1.04) and therefore the<br>field current cannot be set to the<br>required value.<br>Please check the resistance and<br>the temperature of the field and<br>the Parameters Field Cur Nom<br>(1.03) and Field Volt Nom<br>(1.04).<br>Alarm Main Voltage Drop Out                        | 7.12<br>bit 6 | A 11 | Comm Interrupt<br>see also <b>F20</b> | Alarm Communication Inter-<br>rupt<br>If the Parameter Cmd Location<br>(2.02) is not "Fieldbus", this<br>alarm is issued instead of F20, if<br>no message have been recieved<br>for a period longer than the time<br>which has been set in Parame-<br>ter Comm Fault Time (2.08).<br>Please check the connection of<br>Fieldbus cable and check the<br>function of all Fieldbus devices<br>according to the values in Pa- | 7.12<br>bit 10 |
|      |                            | DCS 400 is equipped with an<br>"Auto Reclosing" that allows for a<br>continous operation after short-<br>time mains dropout (provided<br>that the power supply for the<br>controller is not interrupted). If<br>the mains voltage comes back<br>within the time period that was<br>set in Parameter <b>Net Fail Time</b><br>(1.11). This alarm will automati-<br>cally be reset if the mains volt-<br>age comes back within that pe- | bit 7         | A 12 | External Alarm<br>see also <b>F22</b> | rameter Group 8<br>Alarm External Alarm<br>This alarm can be issued by the<br>customer via one of the digital<br>inputs if the selected macro of-<br>fers this function. There is no<br>problem with the drive itself!<br>In case of problems please<br>check the logical level and the<br>connection of the circuit that is<br>connected to the related digital<br>input.  | 7.12<br>bit 11 |
| A 9  | Eme Stop Pending           | riod, otherwise the relevant faults<br>are issued (F9, F11, F12).<br>Alarm Emergency Stop<br>This alarm is issued if the emer-<br>gency stop bit from Fieldbus<br>communication is missing or if<br>the digital input DI5 "Emergency<br>Stop" is not set to "high".<br>Please check the digital input or<br>the condition of all related emer-   | 7.12<br>bit 8 | A 13 | ill Fieldbus Setting                  | Alarm illegal Fieldbus Setting<br>The Fieldbus parameters in Pa-<br>rameter Group 8 are not set<br>according to the Fieldbus de-<br>vice. The device has not been<br>selected.<br>Please check the configuration<br>of the Fieldbus device and set<br>all related parameters in Pa-<br>rameter Group 8 accordingly.   | 7.12<br>bit 12 |
|      |                            | gency stop buttons. Also, if the<br>control is done via Fieldbus de-<br>vice, please check the situation<br>of the Fieldbus control program<br>or the communication state of<br>the Fieldbus. If Parameter <b>Cmd</b>  |               | A 14 | Up/Download Failed                    | Alarm Upload Download Fai-<br>led<br>The checksum verification failed<br>during uploading or downloading<br>between drive and control panel.<br>Try again.  | 7.12<br>bit 13 |
| A 10 | Autotuning Failed          | Location (2.02) is set to "Field-<br>bus", a Fieldbus device must be<br>connected and selected in Pa-<br>rameter Group 8.<br>Alarm Autotuning Failed<br>The autotuning procedure that<br>was started from Commissioning<br>Wizard or maintenance tool or by  | 7.12<br>bit 9 | A 15 | PanTxt not<br>UpToDate                | Alarm Panel Texts not Up-to-<br>Date<br>You are using a panel with an<br>older text version than required<br>by your drive software. Some<br>texts may be missing and dis-<br>played as "?TEXT". Have your<br>panel updated.  | 7.12<br>bit 14 |
|      |                            | setting Parameter <b>Contr Service</b><br>(7.02) can not get the appropri-<br>ate values for the regulators.<br>Please read out Parameter 7.03<br><b>Diagnosis</b> for information about<br>the problem and try to correct it.<br>After that try to run autotuning<br>again.   |               | A 16 | Par Setting Conflict                  | Alarm Parameter Conflict<br>is triggered by parameters the<br>contents of which is conflicting<br>with other parameters. Possible<br>conflicts are described in the<br>Diagnostic Messages 7074,<br>see following chapter.  | 7.12<br>bit 15 |

| 8    | Alarm message<br>Alarm no. | Definition /<br>Possible source  | Param.        |
|------|----------------------------|--|---------------|
| A 17 | Compatibility Alarm        | Alarm Parameter Compatibility<br>When downloading the parame-<br>ters from panel to drive the soft-<br>ware attempts to set the para-<br>meter. If the value is actually not<br>possible to be set (e.g. min/max<br>check fails or not compatible to<br>typecode) this parameter is set to<br>default value. That's mainly pos-<br>sible at parameter <b>Arm Cur Nom</b><br>(1.01). You can look up from pa-<br>rameter <b>Diagnosis (7.03)</b> the<br>number of the last of the con-<br>cerned parameters. All parameter<br>that are not concerned are set to<br>downloaded values. | 7.13<br>bit 0 |

**6.3.6 Diagnostic Messages** The "Diagnosis" Parameter (**7.03**) shows more detailed prob-lem causes to some of the alarms and faults. It is shown automatically if a problem occurs while using the commissioning wizard.

| internal<br>code | 7.03 Diagnosis<br>Diagn. message | Definition /<br>Possible source   |
|------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| 0                | None                             | Actually no problems  |
| 1                | 1                                | Internal software causes.   |
| to               | to                               | Please contact your ABB local   |
| 10               | <u>10</u>                        | service center.   |
| 11               | Tune Aborted                     | Procedure aborted by FAULT or<br>switching off the RUN command.             |
| 12               | No Run Cmd                       | Timeout of procedure was given, if  |
| 12               | No Run Cinu                      | Run signal is not present in time. Pos-                                     |
|                  |                                  | sible problems causes:  |
|                  |                                  | emergency stop pending  |
|                  |                                  | field undercurrent  |
|                  |                                  | no main supply  |
|                  |                                  | blown fuses   |
|                  |                                  | <ul><li>(I) has been pressed too late or</li></ul>                          |
|                  |                                  | not at all  |
| 10               | No. Zana Oraza d                 | (I) has been pressed twice  |
| 13               | No ZeroSpeed                     | Motor is still turning when it is ex-                                       |
|                  |                                  | pected to stand still. Maybe parameter <b>Zero Speed Lev (5.15)</b> to low. |
| 14               | Fld Cur <> 0                     | Field current not zero when it is ex-                                       |
|                  |                                  | pected to be zero.  |
|                  |                                  | Try it again. Otherwise decrease Field                                      |
|                  |                                  | Cur Nom (1.03) to 50% of current  |
|                  |                                  | value temporaryly and try it again. Af-                                     |
|                  |                                  | ter Armature Autotuning set parameter                                       |
|                  |                                  | Field Cur Nom (1.03) back to 100%.  |
| 15               | Arm Cur <> 0                     | Armature current not zero when it is  |
|                  |                                  | expected to be zero.<br>Try it again. Otherwise disconnect the              |
|                  |                                  | armature.   |
| 16               | Arm L Meas                       | Measurement Armature Inductance   |
|                  |                                  | value is higher than maximum value of                                       |
|                  |                                  | Parameter 3.12 (Arm Inductance).  |
|                  |                                  | Not possible to set it by Arm Autotun-                                      |
|                  |                                  | ing. Set it manually to the right value                                     |
|                  |                                  | or to maximum value.  |
| 17               | Arm R Meas                       | Measuremens Armature Resistance   |
|                  |                                  | value is higher than maximum value of Parameter 3.13 (Arm Resistance).      |
|                  |                                  | Not possible to set it by Arm Autotun-                                      |
|                  |                                  | ing. Set it manually to the right value                                     |
|                  |                                  | or to maximum value.  |
| 18               | Field L Meas                     | Not enough measurement for the de-  |
|                  |                                  | tection of field inductance. The value                                      |
|                  |                                  | of "Field L" is used for calculation the                                    |
|                  |                                  | Parameter 4.03 (Field Cur KP).  |
|                  |                                  | Not possible to set it by Fld Autotun-<br>ing. Use Field Man Tuning.        |
| 19               | Field R Meas                     | Not enough measurement for the de-  |
|                  |                                  | tection of field resistance. The value of                                   |
|                  |                                  | "Field R" is used for calculation the                                       |
|                  |                                  | Parameter 4.04 (Field Cur TI).  |
|                  |                                  | Not possible to set it by Fld Autotun-                                      |
|                  |                                  | ing. Use Field Man Tuning.  |

|                 |                | Definition /   |
|-----------------|----------------|--|
| nal<br>de       | 7.03 Diagnosis | Possible source  |
| interna<br>code | Diagn. message |  |
| .=              |                |  |
| 20              | TuneParWrite   | Writing of control parameters or dis-                                  |
|                 |                | continuous current, parameter gener-                                   |
|                 |                | ates fault.  |
| 21              | 21             | Is the motor still turning?. Try it again.<br>Autotuning timeout.      |
| 21              | 21             | Please contact your ABB local  |
|                 |                | service center.  |
| 22              | Tacho Adjust   | Wizard had called you to turn potenti-                                 |
|                 |                | ometer until panel   |
|                 |                | display shows zero, but you have ad-                                   |
|                 |                | justed inaccurately.<br><b>Note</b> : A valid range around zero is +/- |
|                 |                | 200.   |
| 23              | Not Running    | Drive start timeout.   |
|                 |                | Wizard had activated drive start com-                                  |
|                 |                | mand, but drive was not running in                                     |
|                 |                | time. This can be caused by:   |
|                 |                | <ul> <li>emergency stop</li> <li>field undercurrent</li> </ul>         |
|                 |                | no mains supply  |
|                 |                | blown fuses  |
| 24              | Not At Speed   | Wizard had started the drive, but                                      |
|                 |                | speed did not reach set point in time.                                 |
|                 |                | Speed KP too small?<br>Motor stalled?                                  |
|                 |                | Armature circuit open?   |
| 25              | TachPolarity   | Wrong tacho signal polarity. Check                                     |
|                 |                | wiring of tacho, armature and field.                                   |
| 26              | Enc Polarity   | Wrong encoder signal polarity. Check                                   |
|                 |                | wiring of encoder,   |
| 27              | No EncSignal   | armature and field.<br>No encoder signal. Check wiring of              |
|                 |                | encoder.   |
| 28              | StillRunning   | Drive stop timeout.  |
|                 |                | Wizard had activated drive stop com-                                   |
|                 |                | mand , but drive did not reach zero                                    |
| 29              | 29             | speed in time.<br>Parameter read fault.                                |
| 23              | 23             | Please contact your ABB local  |
|                 |                | service center.  |
| 30              | Wiz ParWrite   | Parameter write fault. Wizard tried to                                 |
|                 |                | write a parameter, but the write opera-                                |
|                 |                | tion failed. Is motor still turning? Try it                            |
| 31              | 31             | again.<br>Upload or Download start timeout.                            |
|                 |                | Please contact your ABB local  |
|                 |                | service center.  |
| 32              | UpDn Aborted   | Uploading or Downloading data  |
|                 |                | transfer timeout.  |
|                 |                | Data was not uploaded or downloaded                                    |
|                 |                | in time. Perhaps the connection to the panel has broken.               |
| 33              | NoStandstill   | The drive requested to lock the drive                                  |
|                 |                | in OFF state, but this was not possi-                                  |
|                 |                | ble. During download the drive must                                    |
|                 |                | standstill.  |

|                 |                | Definition /   |
|-----------------|----------------|--|
| nal<br>e        | 7.03 Diagnosis | Possible source  |
| interna<br>code | Diagn. message |  |
| .E O            |                |  |
| 34              | Par Checksum   | Upload or Download checksum fault  |
|                 |                | (may be transfer error).   |
|                 |                | Try once more.   |
|                 |                | Note: If occuring during upload there  |
|                 |                | are actually no valid parameters in the  |
|                 |                | panel. If occuring during download the   |
|                 |                | parameters in the drive remains un-  |
| 25              | 25             | changed.   |
| 35              | 35             | Upload or Download software error.<br>Please contact your ABB local                            |
|                 |                | service center.  |
| 36              | 36             | Upload or Download software error.   |
|                 | 00             | Please contact your ABB local  |
|                 |                | service center.  |
| 37              | Pan Is LOCAL   | Control panel is LOCal   |
| 38-39           | 3839           | not used   |
| 40-49           | 4049           | reserved for SW Messages (F3)  |
| 50-59           | 5059           | reserved for HW Messages (F2)  |
| 60-69           | 6069           | not used   |
| 70              | Fld Low Lim    | The ratio of the <b>nominal field current</b>  |
|                 |                | (1.03) to the minimum field current  |
|                 |                | (4.06) does not match the ratio of the   |
|                 |                | maximum speed (1.06) to the base speed (1.05).   |
| 71              | Flux Char      | Determination of the flux characteristic   |
|                 |                | failed. The values of the parameters   |
|                 |                | Field Cur 40% (4.07), Field Cur 70%  |
|                 |                | (4.08) and Field Cur 90% (4.09) are  |
|                 |                | not arranged in ascending order.   |
| 72              | Field Range    | The parameters for field voltage   |
|                 |                | (1.04) and field current (1.03) are  |
|                 |                | outside the operating range of the field current converter.                                    |
|                 |                |  |
|                 |                |  |
|                 |                | operating range see manual   |
|                 |                | chapter 3.7  |
|                 |                |  |
|                 |                |  |
| 73              | Arm Data       | The parameters <b>armature voltage</b>   |
|                 |                | [Ua] <b>(1.02), armature current</b> [Ia]<br><b>(1.01)</b> and <b>armature resistance</b> [Ra] |
|                 |                | (3.13) do not match. Ua is smaller   |
|                 |                | than ( $Ia \times Ra$ ).   |
| 74              | AI2 vs PTC     | AI2 is set as PTC evaluation and ref-  |
|                 | _              | erence value source. Multiple setting  |
|                 |                | is not permissible. Correct the setting!   |
| 75              | RecoveryTime   | Recovery Time to short.  |
|                 |                | Increase Recovery Time (3.06) or de-   |
|                 |                | crease Arm Cur Max (3.04) or Over-   |
| 70              | CroQ Disable   | load Time (3.05).  |
| 76              | Grp9 Disable   | For macros 2+3+4 its not possible to   |
|                 |                | assign parameters in group 9. Group 9 has to be Macro depend when these                        |
|                 |                | macros are selected. There is anyone   |
|                 |                | disabled or defined different than   |
|                 |                | Macro depend.  |
| 77-79           | 7779           | not used   |
| 80              | Sp Deviation   | Speed does not reach setpoint  |
| 81              | No Accel       | Motor is not accelerating  |
|                 |                |  |

| internal<br>code | 7.03 Diagnosis<br>Diagn. message | Definition /<br>Possible source  |  |
|------------------|----------------------------------|--|--|
| 82               | SpPar Detect                     | Not enough measurement for the de-<br>tection of speed control parameters<br><b>Speed Reg KP (5.07)</b> and <b>Speed Reg</b><br><b>TI (5.08)</b> . |  |
| 83-89            | 8389                             | not used   |  |
| 90               | Shortcut V11                     | Short circuit caused by V11  |  |
| 91               | Shortcut V12                     | Short circuit caused by V12  |  |
| 92               | Shortcut V13                     | Short circuit caused by V13  |  |
| 93               | Shortcut V14                     | Short circuit caused by V14  |  |
| 94               | Shortcut V15                     | Short circuit caused by V15  |  |
| 95               | Shortcut V16                     | Short circuit caused by V16  |  |
| 96               | Result False                     | Result of block test unusable for a<br>clear diagnosis message but there is a<br>problem. A manual test has to be<br>made.                         |  |
| 97               | ShortcV15/22                     | Short circuit caused by V15 or V22   |  |
| 98               | ShortcV16/23                     | Short circuit caused by V16 or V23   |  |
| 99               | ShortcV11/24                     | Short circuit caused by V11 or V24   |  |
| 100              | ShortcV12/25                     | Short circuit caused by V12 or V25   |  |
| 101              | ShortcV13/26                     | Short circuit caused by V13 or V26   |  |
| 102              | ShortcV14/21                     | Short circuit caused by V14 or V21   |  |
| 103              | Ground Fault                     | Motor connected to ground  |  |
| 104              | NoThyrConduc                     | No thyristor is conductive. Armature winding not connected ?   |  |

# 7 Serial interfaces

### General

The DCS 400 is equipped with the following serial interfaces:

- Panel-Port (standard, built-in)
- RS232-Port (standard, built-in)
- Fieldbus-Interface (Adapter available as option)

The fieldbus interface is designed for control via an external PLC, whereas RS232-Port and Panel-Port are intended for setting the parameters in the drive. However, both of the standard interfaces (RS232 and Panel-Port) can be configured to serve as an interface for external drive control.

If one of the three serial interfaces is used for external drive control, the communication of this interface should be supervised. The response of the drive in case of a communication error can be pre-determined by setting the communication parameters below.

#### Note:

All three serial interfaces may operate in parallel. However, it is only possible to customize (i.e. deviate from the default) the settings of one port, which is selected in Parameter Modul Type (8.01). The other ports are then operating with their default settings.

#### **Communcation Parameters**

The following communication paramters are relevant in case of external drives control.

#### Cmd Location (2.02)

Purpose: Determines whether Drive is externally controlled via conventional I/O or serial interface. Value:

- 0 Macro depend
- 1 Terminals (X1...X5 on SDCS-CON-3)
- 2 Bus The serial interface for external control is specified in Parameter Modul Type (8.01) (Fieldbus, RS232-Port or Panel-Port)
- 3 Key Automatic switch over between bus and terminals

#### Comm Fault Time (2.08)

Purpose: For supervision of communication on the serial interface which is used for external drive control (defined in Paramter **Modul Type (8.01)**. Value:

#### 0.01...10 sec

Determines the maximum allowed down time for communication in seconds. If no messages are received within this time, an error message will be issued and the drive will behave according to Parameter **Comm Fault Mode (2.07)**; 0.00s = ignore error, Continue drive operation.

#### Comm Fault Mode (2.07)

Purpose: Defines how the drive will behave in case of communication error.

Value:

- 0 Brake with deceleration ramp (Parameter 5.10), then switch off drive and error message
- Brake with torque = torque limit (Parameter 3.07, 3.08), then switch off of drive and error message.
- 2 Immediate switch off drive and error message

#### Necessary parameter-settings for fieldbus communication

| for fieldbus communication |                 |                       |                       |
|----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Parameter                  | Parameter name  | possible settings     | recommended           |
| 2.02                       | Cmd Location    | 0=Macro depend        |                       |
|                            |                 | 1=Terminals           |                       |
|                            |                 | 2=Bus                 | 2=Bus                 |
|                            |                 | 3=Key                 |                       |
| 2.07                       | Comm Fault Mode | 0=Ramp                | 0=Ramp                |
|                            |                 | 1=Torque Lim          |                       |
|                            |                 | 2=Coast               |                       |
| 2.08                       | Comm Fault Time | 0.00s=no supervision  |                       |
|                            |                 | 0.0110.00s=Fault Time | 0.20s                 |
| 5.01                       | Speed Ref Sel   | 0=Macro depend        |                       |
|                            |                 | 1=AI1                 |                       |
|                            |                 | 2=AI2                 |                       |
|                            |                 | 3=Bus Main Ref        | 3=Bus Main Ref        |
|                            |                 | 4=Bus Aux Ref         |                       |
|                            |                 | 5=Fixed Sp1           |                       |
|                            |                 | 6=Fixed Sp2           |                       |
|                            |                 | 7=Commis Ref1         |                       |
|                            |                 | 8=Commis Ref2         |                       |
|                            |                 | 9=Squarewave          |                       |
|                            |                 | 10=Const Zero         |                       |
| 5.26                       | Aux Sp Ref Sel  | 0=Macro depend        |                       |
|                            |                 | 1=AI1                 |                       |
|                            |                 | 2=AI2                 |                       |
|                            |                 | 3=Bus Main Ref        |                       |
|                            |                 | 4=Bus Aux Ref         | 4=Bus Aux Ref         |
|                            |                 | 5=Fixed Sp1           |                       |
|                            |                 | 6=Fixed Sp2           |                       |
|                            |                 | 7=Commis Ref1         |                       |
|                            |                 | 8=Commis Ref2         |                       |
|                            |                 | 9=Squarewave          |                       |
| ļ                          |                 | 10=Const Zero         |                       |
| 8.01                       | Fieldbus Par 1  | 0=Disable             |                       |
|                            |                 | 1=Fieldbus            |                       |
|                            |                 | 2=RS232-Port          | depend on application |
|                            |                 | 3=Panel-Port          |                       |
|                            |                 | 4=Res Fieldbus        |                       |
| 8.02                       | Fieldbus Par 2  |                       | depend on             |
|                            |                 |                       | parameter 8.01        |
| 8.16                       | Fieldbus Par 16 |                       |                       |

#### **Telegram Structure**

The serial communication with a PLC can be carried out via a field bus adapter, a RS232 port or a panel port. Irrespective of the bus protocol, these ports communicate with the DCS400 software via specified data sets. Four data sets are available with three 16bit words each. The data sets have the following significance:

# Control and reference transmission, from the PLC to the drive

| Data set 1.1: | Main Ctrl Word (5 bits set by |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
|               | parameter group 9)            |
| Data set 1.2: | Bus Main Ref                  |
| Data set 1.3: | Bus Aux Ref                   |

# Status information and actual value transmission, from the drive to the PLC

| Data set 2.1: | Main Status Word (4 bits set by |
|---------------|---------------------------------|
|               | parameter MSW bit 1x Ass        |
|               | (6.226.25))                     |
| Data set 2.2: | Actual value 1 (set by param.   |
|               | Dataset 2.2 As (6.20))          |
| Data set 2.3: | Actual value 2 (set by param.   |
|               | Dataset 2.3 As (6.21))          |
|               |                                 |

# Digital and analogue value transmission, from the PLC to the drive

|               | DO1DO5 (set by 6.116.15)                              |
|---------------|---|
| Data set 3.2: | AOx, Scaling: $\pm 4096 \stackrel{\wedge}{=} \pm 10V$ |
|               | (set by 6.05/6.08)                                    |
| Data set 3.3: | AOx, Scaling: $\pm 4096 \stackrel{\wedge}{=} \pm 10V$ |
|               | (set by 6.05/6.08)                                    |

# Actual value transmission, from the drive to the PLC

| Data set 4.1: | Fld Cur Act (fixed) |
|---------------|---------------------|
| Data set 4.2: | Power Act (fixed)   |
| Data set 4.3: | Torque Act (fixed)  |

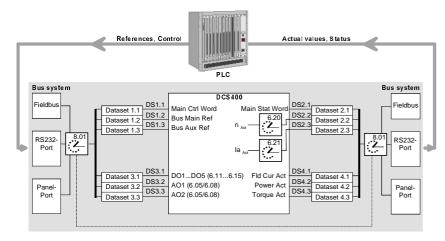


Fig.: 7/1 Data transmission between PLC and DCS 400

#### Control and status word allocation

The allocation of the main control word (data set 1.1) and the main status word (data set 2.1) is identical to **main control word (2.05)** and **main status word (2.06)** of the DCS 400 converter. The allocation is as follows:

| Main Control Word (2.05)                               |            |                   |  |  |
|--|------------|-------------------|--|--|
| Bit  | Name       | Definition        |  |  |
| 0 *  | ON         | 1=Drive ON        |  |  |
|  |            | 0=Drive OFF       |  |  |
| 1 *  | COAST      | 1=not COAST       |  |  |
|  |            | 0=COAST           |  |  |
| 2 *  | EME_STOP   | 1=no EME_STOP     |  |  |
|  |            | 0=EME_STOP        |  |  |
| 3 *  | RUN        | 1=START           |  |  |
|  |            | 0=STOP            |  |  |
| 4  |            | 1=                |  |  |
|  |            | 0=                |  |  |
| 5  |            | 1=                |  |  |
|  |            | 0=                |  |  |
| 6  |            | 1=                |  |  |
|  |            | 0=                |  |  |
| 7  | RESET      | 0>1=RESET         |  |  |
|  |            | 0 =no RESET       |  |  |
| 8  | JOG_1      | 1=JOG 1           |  |  |
|  |            | 0=no JOG 1        |  |  |
| 9  | JOG_2      | 1=JOG 2           |  |  |
|  |            | 0=no JOG 2        |  |  |
| 10   |            | 1=                |  |  |
|  |            | 0=                |  |  |
| 11   | MCW_BIT_11 | Definition see    |  |  |
|  |            | Parameter group 9 |  |  |
| 12   | MCW_BIT_12 | Definition see    |  |  |
|  |            | Parameter group 9 |  |  |
| 13   | MCW_BIT_13 | Definition see    |  |  |
|  |            | Parameter group 9 |  |  |
| 14   | MCW_BIT_14 | Definition see    |  |  |
|  |            | Parameter group 9 |  |  |
| 15   | MCW_BIT_15 | Definition see    |  |  |
|  |            | Parameter group 9 |  |  |
| * effective when Cmd Location (2.02) = Bus; all others |            |                   |  |  |
| are independent from Cmd Location.                     |            |                   |  |  |

Note: For a proper operation **COAST** and **EME STOP** in the Main Control Word has to be setted to log. state **1**.

| Main Status Word (2.06) |                                      |  |  |  |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Bit                     | Name                                 | Definition                             |  |  |
| 0                       | RDY_ON                               | 1=RDY for ON<br>0=not RDY_ON           |  |  |
| 1                       | RDY_RUNNING                          | 1=RDY for RUN<br>0=not RDY_RUN         |  |  |
| 2                       | RUNNING                              | 1=RUNNING<br>0=not RUNNING             |  |  |
| 3                       | FAULT                                | 1=FAULT<br>0=no FAULT                  |  |  |
| 4                       | COAST_ACT                            | 1=not COAST<br>0=COAST                 |  |  |
| 5                       | EME_STOP_ACT                         | 1=not EME_STOP<br>0=EME_STOP           |  |  |
| 6                       |                                      | 1=<br>0=                               |  |  |
| 7                       | ALARM                                | 1=ALARM<br>0=no ALARM                  |  |  |
| 8                       | AT_SETPOINT                          | 1=Ref=Act<br>0=Ref<>Act                |  |  |
| 9                       | REMOTE                               | 1=Terminal/Bus<br>0=Local (Panel/Tool) |  |  |
| 10                      | ABOVE_LIMIT                          | 1=Speed > SpLev1<br>0=Speed < SpLev1   |  |  |
| 11                      | MSW_BIT_11_ASS                       | Definition see<br>Parameter 6.22       |  |  |
| 12                      | MSW_BIT_12_ASS                       | Definition see<br>Parameter 6.23       |  |  |
| 13                      | MSW_BIT_13_ASS                       | Definition see<br>Parameter 6.24       |  |  |
| 14                      | MSW_BIT_14_ASS                       | Definition see<br>Parameter 6.25       |  |  |
| 15                      | DDCS-Protocol<br>(DCS400 to Adapter) | 1=DDCS fault<br>0=DDCS ok              |  |  |

Note: In the Main Stat Word **RDY ON**, **COAST ACT**, **EME STOP ACT** and **REMOTE** is setted to log. state 1, if Elektronics supply is on, Drive is off and no Faults appears.

#### Status word allocation

4 bits of the status word (data set 2.1) can be parameterized. The signals are selected in the parameters MSW bit 11 Ass (6.22), MSW bit 12 Ass (6.23), MSW bit 13 Ass (6.24) and MSW bit 14 Ass (6.25).

#### Data set allocation

The data sets 2.2 and 2.3 transmit two actual values. The actual values are selected in the parameters data set 2.2 Ass (6.20) and data set 2.3 Ass (6.21). Default value for data set 2.2 is Speed Act data set 2.3 is Arm Cur Act

For special purposes data set 3 can transmit directly five digital values and two analogue values which are fix assigned to the outputs. Assignment

| / looigi iiiioiila |         |       |                |
|--------------------|---------|-------|----------------|
| Data set 3.1       | bit 0 = | DO1   | digital value  |
| Data set 3.1       | bit 1 = | DO2   | digital value  |
| Data set 3.1       | bit 2 = | DO3   | digital value  |
| Data set 3.1       | bit 3 = | DO4   | digital value  |
| Data set 3.1       | bit 4 = | DO5   | digital value  |
| Data set 3.2       | =       | AO1/2 | analogue value |
| Data set 3.3       | =       | AO1/2 | analogue value |
|                    |         |       |                |

In the following sections, the three available serial interfaces are described in detail.

#### 7.1 Panel-Port

The Panel Port is normally used for connection of the control panel. The default settings of this interface are as follows:

| Signal level:        | +12V / 0V        |
|----------------------|------------------|
| Data format:         | UART             |
| Message format:      | Modbus-Protocoll |
| Transmission method: | half-duplex      |
| Baudrate:            | 9.600 Baud       |
| Number of Data bits: | 8                |
| Number of Stop bits: | 2                |
| Parity-Bit:          | none             |

Alternatively, this interface may be used for purpose of external drive control, e.g. for connection to RS232-COM-Ports of PC's or to RS485 busses. A specific adapter ("RS232/RS485-Adapter") is available as an option which converts the internal interface signals

according to the requirements of the selected RS 232 or RS 485 interface. This adapter is plugged into the drive, instead of the control panel, and is ready for operation. Either the control panel or the special adapter can be used, not both together.

The adapter provides screw connectors for the RS 485-Bus and a 9-pole SUB-D connector for the RS232. Either the RS 485 or RS232 can be used, not both together.



Parameter Settings of Panel-Port, for purpose of external drive control via Modbus protocol:

| Parameter              | Meaning        | Alternative settings  | Typical Setting |
|------------------------|----------------|---|-----------------|
| 8.01<br>Fieldbus Par 1 | Module Type    | Disable<br>Fieldbus<br>RS232-Port<br>Panel-Port<br>Res Fieldbus         | Panel-Port      |
| 8.02<br>Fieldbus Par 2 | Station Number | 1247  |                 |
| 8.03<br>Fieldbus Par 3 | Baudrate       | 0 = 9.600 Bd<br>1 = 19.200 Bd   | 0 = 9.600 Bd    |
| 8.04<br>Fieldbus Par 4 | Parity         | 0 = none (2 Stop bits)<br>1 = odd (1 Stop bit)<br>2 = even (1 Stop bit) | 0 = none        |

Table 7.1/1: Settings of Panel-Port

Switch Off and On electronics supply to initialize the Panel-Port for drive control via PLC.

If these parameter settings done via panel after electronics supply On, panel display will show 'Comm Loss' due to the panel communication is disabled now. For resetting parameters PC Tool Drive Window Light is needed!

#### 7.2 RS232-Port

The RS232 interface is normally used for setting parameter in the drive via the PC Tool Drive Window Light.

Therefore normally the communication supervision is de-activated.

The default settings of this interface are as follows:

| Signal level:<br>Data format:<br>Message format:<br>Transmission method:<br>Baudrate: | RS232 (+12V / -12V)<br>UART<br>Modbus-Protocol<br>half-duplex<br>9.600 Baud |
|---|---|
| Number of Data bits:  | 8   |
| Number of Stop bits:  | 1   |
| Parity-Bit:   | odd   |

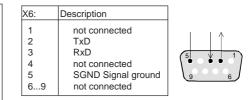


Fig. 7.2/1 Pin assignment of RS232-Port

| Parameter    | Settings  | of F  | RS232-Por | t, for | purpose | of |
|--------------|-----------|-------|-----------|--------|---------|----|
| external dri | ve contro | l via | Modbus p  | rotoc  | ol:     |    |

| Parameter              | Meaning        | Alternative settings  | Typical Setting |
|------------------------|----------------|---|-----------------|
| 8.01<br>Fieldbus Par 1 | Module Type    | Disable<br>Fieldbus<br>RS232-Port<br>Panel-Port<br>Res Fieldbus         | RS232-Port      |
| 8.02<br>Fieldbus Par 2 | Station Number | 1247  |                 |
| 8.03<br>Fieldbus Par 3 | Baudrate       | 0 = 9.600 Bd<br>1 = 19.200 Bd   | 0 = 9.600 Bd    |
| 8.04<br>Fieldbus Par 4 | Parity         | 0 = none (2 Stop bits)<br>1 = odd (1 Stop bit)<br>2 = even (1 Stop bit) | 0 = none        |

Table 7.2/1: Settings of RS232-Port

Switch Off and On electronics supply to initialize the RS232-Port for drive control via PLC.

If these parameter settings done via PC Tool Drive Window Light after electronics supply On, Drive Window Light does not work longer due to the Tool communication is disabled now.

For resetting parameters the control panel is needed!

### 7.3 Fieldbus interface

For connection to external control devices, like PLCs, typically the third serial interface, "fieldbus interface" is used.

Several fieldbus protocol specific adapters are available as options for the DCS 400. The following description is an overview. Detailed information is available from the specific adapter descriptions.

#### **Characteristics:**

- Fieldbus adapter is mounted on external mounting rail
- · Power supply from DCS 400 (built-in)
- Connection between adapter and DCS 400 is optical cable
- DCS 400 automatically detects the connected fieldbus type
- Therefore, the user specific paramter settings are drastically reduced

User specific parameters like e.g. station addresses or Modbus settings are only set once, during the commissioning.

#### Short Commissioning Guide

- Switch Off DCS 400 electronics power suppl.
- Mount fieldbus adapter on mounting rail.
- Connect adapter to power supply (X8).
- Connect optical cables from adapter to DCS 400 (V800).
- Connect fieldbus cable to fieldbus adapter.
- Switch **On** DCS 400 electronics power supply.
- Wait approximately 10 s. During this time an initialization is done between fieldbus adapter and DCS 400. Most of fieldbus parameter are pre-defined by the fieldbus adapter automatically after that procedure.
- Set Fieldbus Par 1 (8.01) (Module Type) = Fieldbus.
- Set user specific parameters. For detailed description, refer to the description which is following the fieldbus adapaters.
- Wait 10 s.
- Switch **Off and On** again the electronics power supply, in order to re-initialize the user specific parameter settings, which have been changed to include the serial communications.

The communication parameters **Cmd Location (2.02)**, **Comm Fault Mode (2.07)** and **Comm Fault Time (2.08)** need to be set manually, for the purpose of communication supervision. See chapter about *communication parameters* earlier in this document.

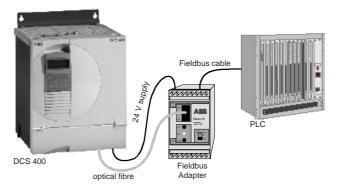


Fig: 7.3/1 Connection of a Fieldbus Adapter to DCS 400 and PLC

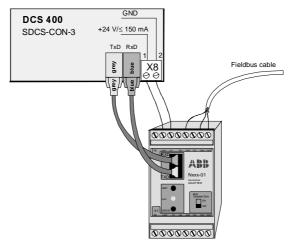


Fig.: 7.3/2 Connection of Fieldbus Adapter to DCS 400

# Parameter overview for the most commonly used fieldbuses

For parameter setting, with the control panel, intially switch to **Long Par List**, in the MENU selection, in

order to make the parameters visible. Continue with setting of the user specific parameters (**bold** typed).

| Descent   |                          |  | Transformation and the sec |
|-----------|--------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| Parameter | Meaning                  | Alternative settings                         | Typical settings           |
| 8.01      | Module Type              | 0 = Disable<br>1 = Fieldbus                  | Fieldbus                   |
|           |                          | 2 = RS232-Port                               |                            |
|           |                          | 3 = Panel-Port                               |                            |
|           |                          | 4 = Res Feldbus                              |                            |
| 8.02      | Profibus Mode            | 0 = FMS                                      |                            |
|           |                          | 1 = PPO1                                     | 1 = PPO1                   |
|           |                          | Data transf. PLC to DCS                      |                            |
|           |                          | (DS1.1, 1.2+Par)<br>Data transf. DCS to PLC  |                            |
|           |                          | (DS2.1, 2.2+Par)                             |                            |
|           |                          | 2 = PPO2                                     |                            |
|           |                          | Data transf. PLC to DCS                      |                            |
|           |                          | (DS1.11.3, 3.13.3 +Par)                      |                            |
|           |                          | Data transf. DCS to PLC                      |                            |
|           |                          | (DS2.12.3, 4.14.3 +Par)                      |                            |
|           |                          | 3 = PPO3                                     |                            |
|           |                          | Data transf. PLC to DCS                      |                            |
|           |                          | (DS1.1, 1.2)                                 |                            |
|           |                          | Data transf. DCS to PLC<br>(DS2.1, 2.2)      |                            |
|           |                          | 4 = PPO4 (DS1.1, 1.2+Par)                    |                            |
|           |                          | Data transf. PLC to DCS                      |                            |
|           |                          | (DS1.11.3, 3.13.3)                           |                            |
|           |                          | Data transf. DCS to PLC                      |                            |
|           |                          | (DS2.12.3, 4.14.3)                           |                            |
| 8.03      | Station Number           | 2126   | 2                          |
| 8.04      | Baudrate                 | 0 = 9,6 kBd                                  |                            |
|           |                          | 1 = 19,2 kBd                                 |                            |
|           |                          | 2 = 93,75 kBd                                | 6 = Auto                   |
|           |                          | 3 = 187,5 kBd                                |                            |
|           |                          | 4 = 500 kBd                                  |                            |
|           |                          | 5 = 1,5 MBd                                  |                            |
|           |                          | 6 = Auto                                     |                            |
| 8.05      | Number of Data Set Pairs | 1 = if 8.02 = 1 or 3<br>2 = if 8.02 = 2 or 4 | 1 (8.02 = 1)               |
| 8.06      | Data Set Offset          | 0255   | 0 = no Offset              |
| 8.07      | Cut Off Timeout          | 0255 (20ms grid)                             |                            |
|           |                          | between NPBA-02 and                          | 30 = 600ms                 |
|           |                          | Master                                       |                            |
| 8.08      | Comm Profile             | 0 = ABB DRIVES                               | 0 = ABB DRIVES             |
|           |                          | 1 = CSA 2.8/3.0                              |                            |

#### Profibus (including parameter transfer)

#### Modbus (including parameter transfer)

| Parameter | Meaning        | Alternative settings   | Typical settings |
|-----------|----------------|--|------------------|
| 8.01      | Module Type    | 0 = Disable<br>1 = Fieldbus<br>2 = RS232-Port<br>3 = Panel-Port<br>4 = Res Feldbus | Fieldbus         |
| 8.02      | Modbus Mode    | 0 = RTU wdg:flt<br>1 = RTU wdg:rst   | 0 = RTU wdg:flt  |
| 8.03      | Station Number | 1247   | 1                |
| 8.04      | Baudrate       | 0 = 1.200 Bd<br>1 = 2.400 Bd<br>2 = 4.800 Bd<br>3 = 9.600 Bd<br>4 = 19.200 Bd      | 3 = 9.600 Bd     |
| 8.05      | Parity         | 0 = even (1 Stop bit)<br>1 = odd (1 Stop bit)<br>2 = none (2 Stop bits)            | 2 = ohne         |
| 8.06      | Good message   | 065535   | -                |
| 8.07      | Bad message    | 065535   | -                |

|           |                  | ,                    |                  |
|-----------|------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| Parameter | Meaning          | Alternative settings | Typical settings |
| 8.01      | Module Type      | 0 = Disable          |                  |
|           |                  | 1 = Fieldbus         | Fieldbus         |
|           |                  | 2 = RS232-Port       |                  |
|           |                  | 3 = Panel-Port       |                  |
|           |                  | 4 = Res Feldbus      |                  |
| 8.02      | Protocol         | 1                    | 1 = ABB CS31     |
| 8.03      | Modul ID         | 0 = Word             | 0 = Word         |
|           |                  | 1 = Binary           |                  |
| 8.04      | Station Number   | 0 5 (Word Mode)      | 1                |
|           |                  | 057 (Binary Mode)    |                  |
| 8.05      | Addr Index       | 0 = lower            | 0 = lower        |
|           |                  | 1 = upper            |                  |
| 8.06      | Data Sets        | 13                   | 1                |
| 8.07      | Data Set 1 Const | 132767 (1=6ms)       | 1                |
| 8.08      | Data Set 2 Const | 132767 (1=6ms)       | 1                |
| 8.09      | Data Set 3 Const | 132767 (1=6ms)       | 1                |
| 8.10      | Data Set Offset  | 1255                 | 1                |
| -         |                  |                      |                  |

#### CS31 (without parameter transfer)

#### CAN-Bus (including parameter transfer)

| Description |                  |                      | The instant and the second     |
|-------------|------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Parameter   | Meaning          | Alternative settings | Typical settings               |
| 8.01        | Module Type      | 0 = Disable          |                                |
|             |                  | 1 = Fieldbus         | Fieldbus                       |
|             |                  | 2 = RS232-Port       |                                |
|             |                  | 3 = Panel-Port       |                                |
|             |                  | 4 = Res Feldbus      |                                |
| 8.02        | Protocoll        | 0 = CANopen: flt     | 0 = CANopen: flt               |
|             |                  | 1 = CANopen: rst     |                                |
| 8.03        | Station nor      | 1127                 | 1                              |
| 8.04        | Baudrate         | 0 = 1 MBd            |                                |
|             |                  | 1 = 500 kBd          |                                |
|             |                  | 2 = 250 kBd          |                                |
|             |                  | 3 = 125 kBd          | 3 = 125 kBd                    |
|             |                  | 4 = 100 kBd          |                                |
|             |                  | 5 = 50  kBd          |                                |
|             |                  | 6 = 20 kBd           |                                |
|             |                  | 7 = 10 kBd           |                                |
| 8.05        | Comm Profile     | 0 = CSA 2.8/3.0      |                                |
|             |                  | 1 = ABB Drives       | 1 = ABB Drives                 |
| 8.06        | Cut Off Timeout  | 0255 (20ms grid)     |                                |
|             |                  | between NCAN-02 und  | 10 = 200ms                     |
|             |                  | Master               |                                |
| 8.07        | Status           | 0 = Self Test        | 0 = adapter self test          |
|             |                  | 1 = RX Q Overrun     | 1 = receiver overrun (SW)      |
|             |                  | 2 = CAN Overrun      | 2 = receiver overrun (HW)      |
|             |                  | 3 = Bus Off          | 3 = adapter in Bus Off State   |
|             | messages of      | 4 = Error Set        | 4 = adapter error bit setted   |
|             | fieldbus adapter | 5 = Error Reset      | 5 = adapter error bit resetted |
|             |                  | 6 = TX Q Overrun     | 6 = transmitter overrun        |
|             |                  | 7 = Disconnected     | 7 = node disconnected          |
|             |                  | 8 = Started          | 8 = node started               |
|             |                  | 9 = Stopped          | 9 = node stopped               |
|             |                  | 10 = G Fails         | 10 = node active during        |
|             |                  | 11 Pre-Operat        | 11 = node has changed to       |
|             |                  | 12 = Reset Comm      | pre-operation                  |
|             |                  | 13 = Reset Node      | 12 = reset communication       |
|             |                  |                      | 13 = reset node                |

 Table 7.3/1:
 Parameter settings for the most commonly used fieldbus adapters

For detailed information please refer to the related fieldbus adapter description.

In the case you need a fieldbus other than shown, please contact your local ABB sales office. ABB is continuously developing on new solutions.

Serial Interfaces

# Appendix

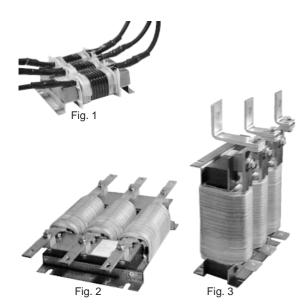
# Appendix A

# Appendix A - Accessories

# Line chokes L1

| DCS type             | Type of | Fig. |
|----------------------|---------|------|
| 500V                 | reactor | 0    |
| 2-quadrant converter |         |      |
| DCS401.0020          | ND01    | 1    |
| DCS401.0045          | ND02    | 1    |
| DCS401.0065          | ND04    | 1    |
| DCS401.0090          | ND05    | 1    |
| DCS401.0125          | ND06    | 1    |
| DCS401.0180          | ND07    | 2    |
| DCS401.0230          | ND07    | 2    |
| DCS401.0315          | ND09    | 2    |
| DCS401.0405          | ND10    | 2    |
| DCS401.0500          | ND10    | 2    |
| DCS401.0610          | ND12    | 2    |
| DCS401.0740          | ND12    | 2    |
| 4-quadrant converter |         |      |
| DCS402.0025          | ND01    | 1    |
| DCS402.0050          | ND02    | 1    |
| DCS402.0075          | ND04    | 1    |
| DCS402.0100          | ND05    | 1    |
| DCS402.0140          | ND06    | 1    |
| DCS402.0200          | ND07    | 2    |
| DCS402.0260          | ND07    | 2    |
| DCS402.0350          | ND09    | 2    |
| DCS402.0450          | ND10    | 2    |
| DCS402.0550          | ND10    | 2    |
| DCS402.0680          | ND12    | 2    |
| DCS402.0820          | ND13    | 3    |

Table A/1: Line chokes



### Appendix A

 $\bigcirc$ 

6

10

16

25

35

#### Line chokes type ND

| Туре  | Choke |      |                   | Weight | Powe | er loss |
|-------|-------|------|-------------------|--------|------|---------|
|       | L     | I ms | I <sub>peak</sub> |        | Fe   | Cu      |
|       | [µH]  | [A]  | [A]               | [kg]   | [W]  | [W]     |
| ND 01 | 512   | 18   | 27                | 2.0    | 5    | 16      |
| ND 02 | 250   | 37   | 68                | 3.0    | 7    | 22      |
| ND 04 | 168   | 55   | 82                | 5.8    | 10   | 33      |
| ND 05 | 135   | 82   | 122               | 6.4    | 5    | 30      |
| ND 06 | 90    | 102  | 153               | 7.6    | 7    | 41      |
| ND 07 | 50    | 184  | 275               | 12.6   | 45   | 90      |
| ND 09 | 37.5  | 245  | 367               | 16.0   | 50   | 140     |
| ND 10 | 25.0  | 367  | 551               | 22.2   | 80   | 185     |
| ND 12 | 18.8  | 490  | 734               | 36.0   | 95   | 290     |
| ND 13 | 18.2  | 698  | 1047              | 46.8   | 170  | 160     |

Table A/2: Data of line chokes

## Line chokes type ND 01...ND 06

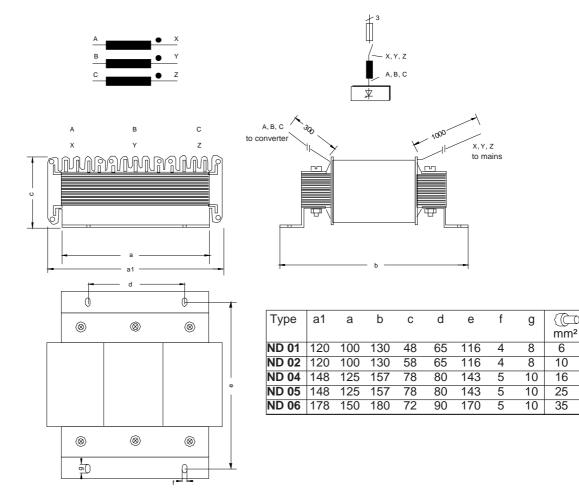
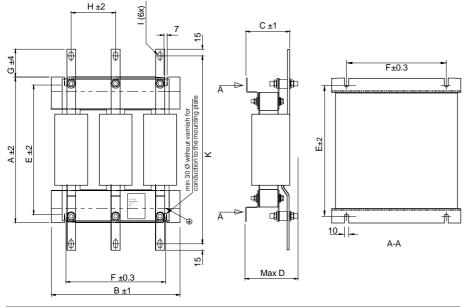


Fig. A/1: Line choke type ND 01...ND 06

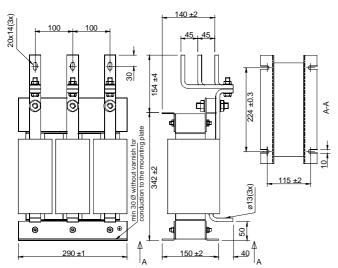
II K A-2

# Line chokes type ND 07...ND 12



| Туре  | A   | В   | С   | D   | E   | F   | G  | Н   | I     | Κ   |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|-----|-------|-----|
| ND 07 | 285 | 230 | 86  | 115 | 253 | 176 | 65 | 80  | 9x17  | 385 |
| ND 09 | 327 | 290 | 99  | 120 | 292 | 224 | 63 | 100 | 11x21 | 423 |
| ND 10 | 408 | 290 | 99  | 120 | 373 | 224 | 63 | 100 | 11x21 | 504 |
| ND 12 | 458 | 290 | 120 | 145 | 423 | 224 | 63 | 100 | 11x21 | 554 |

Fig. A4/2: Line chokes type ND 07...ND 12



### Line chokes type ND 13

Fig. A/3: Line chokes type ND 13

### Fuses and fuse holders for armaturecircuit supply

The semiconductor fuses used are blade fuses. The relevant data are listed in the table below. The fuses' construction requires special fuse holders. Fuse holder of the OFAX and OFAS type series are available for this purpose.

| Conerter type        | Manufacturer/ Type | Fuse holder |
|----------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| 2-quadrant converter |                    |             |
| DCS401.0020          | Bussman 170M 1564  | OFAX 00 S3L |
| DCS401.0045          | Bussman 170M 1566  | OFAX 00 S3L |
| DCS401.0065          | Bussman 170M 1568  | OFAX 00 S3L |
| DCS401.0090          | Bussman 170M 1568  | OFAX 00 S3L |
| DCS401.0125          | Bussman 170M 3815  | OFAX 1 S3   |
| DCS401.0180          | Bussman 170M 3815  | OFAX 1 S3   |
| DCS401.0230          | Bussman 170M 3817  | OFAX 1 S3   |
| DCS401.0315          | Bussman 170M 5810  | OFAX 2 S3   |
| DCS401.0405          | Bussman 170M 6811  | OFAS B 3    |
| DCS401.0500          | Bussman 170M 6811  | OFAS B 3    |
| DCS401.0610          | Bussman 170M 6813  | OFAS B 3    |
| DCS401.0740          | Bussman 170M 6813  | OFAS B 3    |
| 4-quadrant converter |                    |             |
| DCS402.0025          | Bussman 170M 1564  | OFAX 00 S3L |
| DCS402.0050          | Bussman 170M 1566  | OFAX 00 S3L |
| DCS402.0075          | Bussman 170M 1568  | OFAX 00 S3L |
| DCS402.0100          | Bussman 170M 1568  | OFAX 00 S3L |
| DCS402.0140          | Bussman 170M 3815  | OFAX 1 S3   |
| DCS402.0200          | Bussman 170M 3816  | OFAX 1 S3   |
| DCS402.0260          | Bussman 170M 3817  | OFAX 1 S3   |
| DCS402.0350          | Bussman 170M 5810  | OFAX 2 S3   |
| DCS402.0450          | Bussman 170M 6811  | OFAS B 3    |
| DCS402.0550          | Bussman 170M 6811  | OFAS B 3    |
| DCS402.0680          | Bussman 170M 6813  | OFAS B 3    |
| DCS402.0820          | Bussman 170M 6813  | OFAS B 3    |

Table A/3: Fuses and fuse holders

| Manufacturer/ Type | Resistance [m $\Omega$ ] | Fuse F1      | Size | Fuse holder | Caliper [mm] |
|--------------------|--------------------------|--------------|------|-------------|--------------|
| Bussman 170M 1564  | 6                        | 50A 660V UR  | 0    | OFAX 00 S3L | 78.5         |
| Bussman 170M 1566  | 3                        | 80A 660V UR  | 0    | OFAX 00 S3L | 78.5         |
| Bussman 170M 1568  | 1.8                      | 125A 660V UR | 0    | OFAX 00 S3L | 78.5         |
| Bussman 170M 3815  | 0.87                     | 200A 660V UR | 1    | OFAX 1 S3   | 135          |
| Bussman 170M 3816  |                          | 250A 660V UR | 1    | OFAX 1 S3   | 135          |
| Bussman 170M 3817  |                          | 315A 660V UR | 1    | OFAX 1 S3   | 135          |
| Bussman 170M 3819  | 0.37                     | 400A 660V UR | 1    | OFAX 1 S3   | 135          |
| Bussman 170M 5810  | 0.3                      | 500A 660V UR | 2    | OFAX 2 S3   | 150          |
| Bussman 170M 6811  | 0.22                     | 700A 660V UR | 3    | OFAS B 3    | 150          |
| Bussman 170M 6813  | 0.15                     | 900A 660V UR | 3    | OFAS B 3    | 150          |

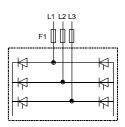


Table A/4: Fuses and fuse holders

#### Dimensions [mm] Size 0...3

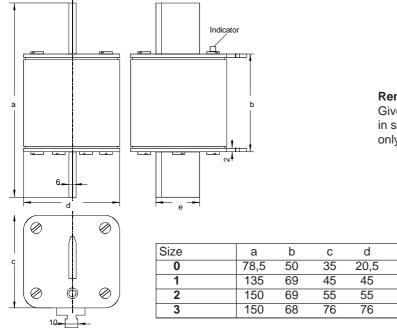
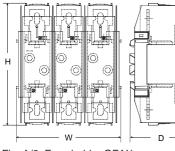


Fig. A/5: Fuses size 0...3

#### Main dimensions of fuse holders

| Fuse        | HxWxD       |
|-------------|-------------|
| holder      | [mm]        |
| OFAX 00 S3L | 148x112x111 |
| OFAX 1 S3   | 250x174x123 |
| OFAX 2 S3   | 250x214x133 |
| OFAS B 3    | 250x246x136 |

Table A/5: Fuse holders



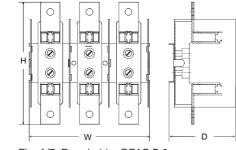


Fig. A/6: Fuse holder OFAX ...

Fig. A/7: Fuse holder OFAS B 3

II K A-5

#### Remark:

е

15

20

26

33

Given dimensions may be exceeded in some cases. Please take them only for information.

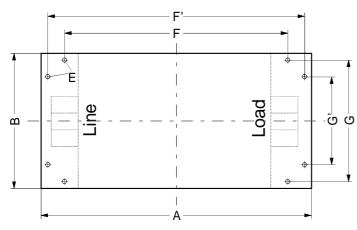
#### **EMC Filters**

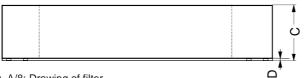
#### **Three-phase filters**

EMC mains filters are necessary so as to comply with EN 50 081 if a power converter is to be operated at a public low-voltage grid, in Europe, for example, with 400 V between the phases. Grids of this kind have an earthed neutral conductor. For these cases, ABB offers its three-phase mains filters for 500 V and 25 A ... 1000 A.

On local lines inside factories they do not supply sensitive electronics. Therefore converters do not need EMC filters.

In chapter 5.2 Installation in accordance with EMC the topic EMC filter is described.





| Converter type    | Rat. direct current | Filter type <b>1</b> | Weight<br>appr. | Dimensions<br>L x W x H |
|-------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
|                   | [A]                 |                      | [kg]            | [mm]                    |
| 2-quadr. convert. |                     |                      |                 |                         |
| DCS401.0020       | 20                  | NF3-500-25           | 3               | 200x150x65              |
| DCS401.0045       | 45                  | NF3-500-50           | 3.1             | 200x150x65              |
| DCS401.0065       | 65                  | NF3-500-64           | 3.1             | 200x150x65              |
| DCS401.0090       | 90                  | NF3-500-80           | 9.5             | 400x170x90              |
| DCS401.0125       | 125                 | NF3-500-110          | 9.5             | 400x170x90              |
| DCS401.0180       | 180                 | NF3-500-320          | 28              | 450x285x171             |
| DCS401.0230       | 230                 | NF3-500-320          | 28              | 450x285x171             |
| DCS401.0315       | 315                 | NF3-500-320          | 28              | 450x285x171             |
| DCS401.0405       | 405                 | NF3-500-320          | 28              | 450x285x171             |
| DCS401.0500       | 500                 | NF3-500-600          | 49              | 590x305x158             |
| DCS401.0610       | 610                 | NF3-500-600          | 49              | 590x305x158             |
| DCS401.0740       | 740                 | NF3-500-600          | 49              | 590x305x158             |
| 4-quadr. convert. |                     |                      |                 |                         |
| DCS402.0025       | 25                  | NF3-500-25           | 3               | 200x150x65              |
| DCS402.0050       | 50                  | NF3-500-50           | 3.1             | 200x150x65              |
| DCS402.0075       | 75                  | NF3-500-80           | 9.5             | 400x170x90              |
| DCS402.0100       | 100                 | NF3-500-80           | 9.5             | 400x170x90              |
| DCS402.0140       | 140                 | NF3-500-110          | 9.5             | 400x170x90              |
| DCS402.0200       | 200                 | NF3-500-320          | 28              | 450x285x171             |
| DCS402.0260       | 260                 | NF3-500-320          | 28              | 450x285x171             |
| DCS402.0350       | 350                 | NF3-500-320          | 28              | 450x285x171             |
| DCS402.0450       | 450                 | NF3-500-600          | 49              | 590x305x158             |
| DCS402.0550       | 550                 | NF3-500-600          | 49              | 590x305x158             |
| DCS402.0680       | 680                 | NF3-500-600          | 49              | 590x305x158             |
| DCS402.0820       | 820                 | NF3-690-1000         | 90              | 610x305x198             |

The filters 25 ... 600 A are available for 440 V and for 500 V.

The filters can be optimized to suit the actual motor currents 0

 $I_{\text{Filter}} = 0.8 \bullet I_{\text{MOT max}}$ ; the factor 0.8 takes into account the current ripple.

Table A/6: Main filter data

Fig. A/8: Drawing of filter

| Filter type  | max.    | I <sub>N</sub> | Α   | В   | С   | D    |     | Fix | king dim | ensions |     | Conne              | ction  | Weight | PE  |
|--------------|---------|----------------|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|----------|---------|-----|--------------------|--------|--------|-----|
|              | voltage |                |     |     |     |      | ΕØ  | F   | F'       | G       | G'  | bar with           | Term.  | kg     |     |
|              | -       |                |     |     |     |      |     |     |          |         |     | hole $\varnothing$ | (mm²)* |        |     |
| NF3-440-25   | 440     | 25             | 250 | 150 | 65  | 0.75 | 6.5 | 115 |          | 135     |     |                    | 4      | 3.0    | M6  |
| NF3-440-50   | 440     | 50             | 250 | 150 | 65  | 0.75 | 6.5 | 115 |          | 135     |     |                    | 10/16  | 3.1    | M6  |
| NF3-440-64   | 440     | 64             | 250 | 150 | 65  | 0.75 | 6.5 | 115 |          | 135     |     |                    | 10/16  | 3.1    | M6  |
| NF3-440-80   | 440     | 80             | 427 | 170 | 90  | 1.13 | 6.5 |     | 375      |         | 130 |                    | 25/35  | 9.5    | M10 |
| NF3-440-110  | 440     | 110            | 436 | 170 | 90  | 1.13 | 6.5 |     | 375      |         | 130 |                    | 50     | 9.5    | M10 |
|              |         |                |     |     |     |      |     |     |          |         |     |                    |        |        |     |
| NF3-500-25   | 500     | 25             | 250 | 150 | 65  | 0.75 | 6.5 | 115 |          | 135     |     |                    | 4      | 3.0    | M6  |
| NF3-500-50   | 500     | 50             | 250 | 150 | 65  | 0.75 | 6.5 | 115 |          | 135     |     |                    | 10/16  | 3.1    | M6  |
| NF3-500-64   | 500     | 64             | 250 | 150 | 65  | 0.75 | 6.5 | 115 |          | 135     |     |                    | 10/16  | 3.1    | M6  |
| NF3-500-80   | 500     | 80             | 427 | 170 | 90  | 1.13 | 6.5 |     | 375      |         | 130 |                    | 25/35  | 9.5    | M10 |
| NF3-500-110  | 500     | 110            | 436 | 170 | 90  | 1.13 | 6.5 |     | 375      |         | 130 |                    | 50     | 9.5    | M10 |
| NF3-500-320  | 500     | 320            | 450 | 285 | 171 | 4    | 12  | 200 |          | 260     |     | 11                 |        | 32     | M10 |
| NF3-500-600  | 500     | 600            | 590 | 305 | 158 | 6    | 12  | 280 |          | 280     |     | 11                 |        | 50     | M10 |
|              |         |                |     |     |     |      |     |     |          |         |     |                    |        |        |     |
| NF3-690-600  | 690     | 600            | 590 | 305 | 158 | 6    | 12  | 280 |          | 280     |     | 11                 |        | 50     | M10 |
| NF3-690-1000 | 690     | 1000           | 610 | 305 | 198 | 6    | 12  | 280 |          | 280     |     | 14                 |        | 64     | M10 |
| NF3-690-1600 | 690     | 1600           | 844 | 465 | 210 | 8    | 12  | 320 |          | 440     |     | 2x14               |        | 195    | M12 |
| NF3-690-2500 | 690     | 2500           | 950 | 520 | 293 | 10   | 14  | 380 |          | 490     |     | 2x14               |        | 350    | M16 |

\* sigle cor / litz wire

Fig. A/7: Dimensions of filter

II K A-6



# **EC Declaration of Conformity**

( Directive 73/23/EEC [Low Voltage], as amended by 93/68/EEC ) ( Directive 89/336/EEC [EMC], as amended by 93/68/EEC )

Document code : ABB/DEIND/A <u>99-01</u> Date : 14.04.1999

We

ABB Industrietechnik GmbH Division Drives Edisonstraße 15, D - 68623 Lampertheim, Germany

declare under our sole responsibility that the product series

### DCS 400 Converter Module

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with following standards EN 60146-1-1 : 1991 [IEC 146-1-1] EN 60204-1 : 1992 + 1993 [IEC 204-1] (furthermore applied standards : IEC 664-1, EN 60529 / IEC 529, EN 50178)

following the provisions of Directive 73/23/EEC, as amended by 93/68/EEC

and

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with following standard

| EN 61800-3 | : 1997 | [ IEC 1800-3 ] |
|------------|--------|----------------|
| EN 50081-2 | : 1994 |                |
| EN 50082-2 | : 1996 |                |

following the provisions of Directive 89/336/EEC, as amended by 93/68/EEC provided that the DCS 400 Converter Module is equipped with a dedicated transformer or any other adequate mitigation method to reduce the disturbance voltage level to a permissible value at the point of connection of other low voltage equipment, and that the provisions of the final installation at the place of operation presented in the

3 ADW 000 032Installation of Converters in accordance with EMC3 ADW 000 095Manual3 ADW 000 033Safety and operating instructions for drive convertersare met.Safety and operating instructions for drive converters

The Technical Construction File, code 3ADT 061003, to which this declaration relates has been assessed by Report and Certificate 9019a from ABB EMC Certification AB being the Competent Body according to EMC Directive 89/336/EEC. The File conforms with the protection requirements of the Directive 89/336/EEC article 10(2).

Lampertheim 14.04.1999

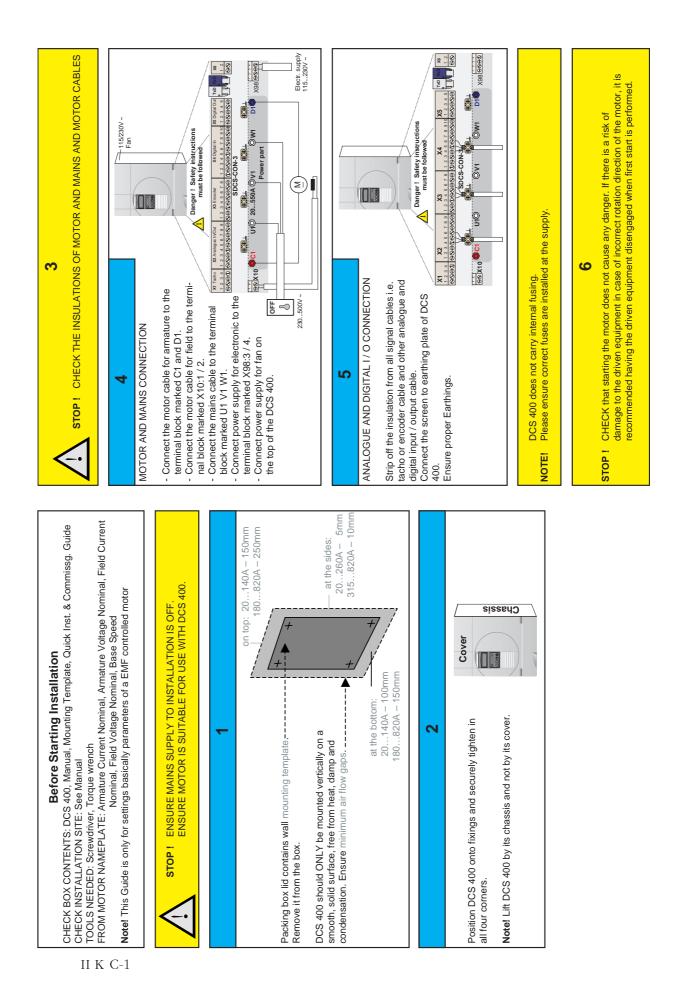
IND / A Thomas Wagner Senior Vice President

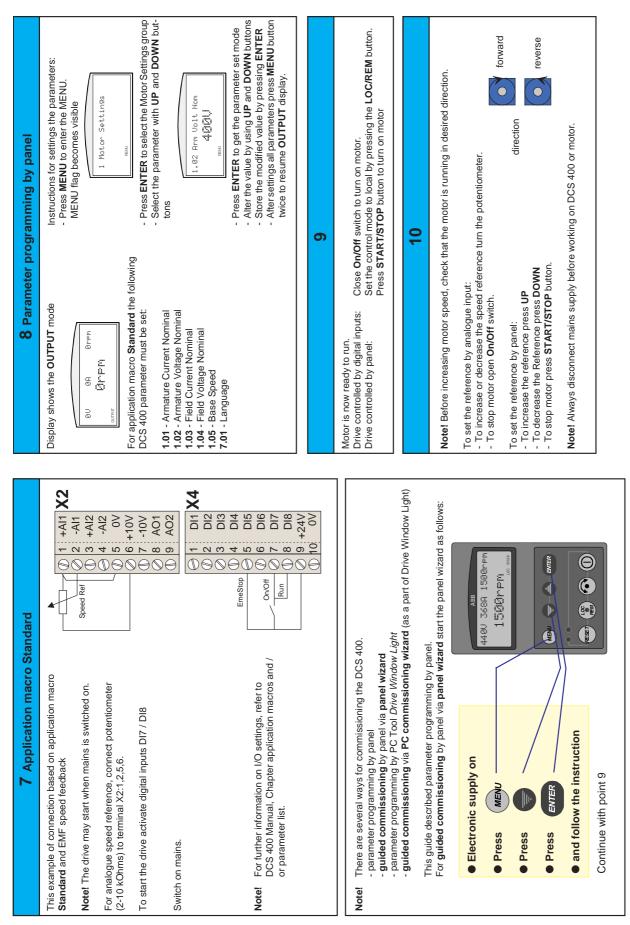
IND / AM Ralf Form Vice President

This declaration does not express any assurance of characteristics. Installation and safety instructions mentioned in our installation manual must be obeyed. The complince was tested in a typical configuration.

Formular : AQ96001

II K B-1





# Appendix C

II K C-2

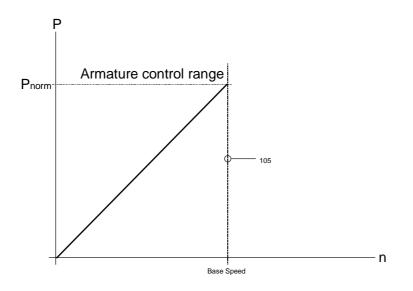
#### Appendix D - Examples for basic parameter programming

The experience has shown that certain parameters must be adapted in most applications.

These parameters show the following tables.

- Table 1:
   Operation for armature control mode
- Table 2: Operation for field control mode
- Table 3: Operation for field control mode with speed-dependent current limitation
- Table 4: Common parameters for the three operating modes

### Operation for armature control mode

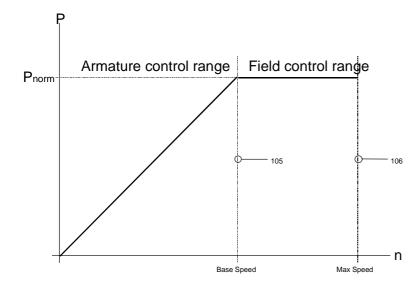


#### Table 1

| Parameter Parameter number name |                                       | Significance  | Contents            | Entry |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|---------------------|-------|
| 101                             | Arm Cur Nom Nominal armature current  |   | la <sub>nom</sub>   |       |
| 102                             | Arm Volt Nom Nominal armature voltage |   | Ua <sub>nom</sub>   |       |
| 103                             | Field Cur Nom                         | Nominal field current   | le <sub>nom</sub>   |       |
| 104                             | Field Volt Nom                        | Nominal field voltage   | Ue <sub>nom</sub>   |       |
| 105                             | Base Speed                            | Nominal speed   | n <sub>nom</sub>    |       |
| 106                             | Max Speed                             | Nominal speed = (1.05)  | n <sub>nom</sub>    |       |
| 201                             | Macro Select                          | Application macro selection                                   | Selection           |       |
| 203                             | Stop Mode                             | Stop mode selection   | Selection           |       |
| 204                             | Eme Stop Mode                         | Emergency stop mode selection                                 | Selection           |       |
| 502                             | Speed Meas Mode                       | EMF or tacho or encoder<br>(Initial start-up = EMF)           | Selection           |       |
| 503                             | Encoder Inc                           | Number of increments per rev.<br>(if parameter 502 = Encoder) | Number of<br>pulses |       |
| 509                             | Accel Ramp                            | Acceleration ramp   | sec                 |       |
| 510                             | Decel Ramp                            | Deceleration ramp   | sec                 |       |
| 511                             | Eme Stop Ramp                         | Emergency stop ramp<br>(if parameter 204 = Ramp)              | sec                 |       |
| 601                             | Al1 Scale 100%                        | Reference signal voltage at 100% speed                        | 10 V                |       |
| 602                             | AI1 Scale 0%                          | Reference signal voltage at 0% speed                          | 0 V                 |       |
| 701                             | Language                              | Panel language selection                                      | Selection           |       |

continue with table 4

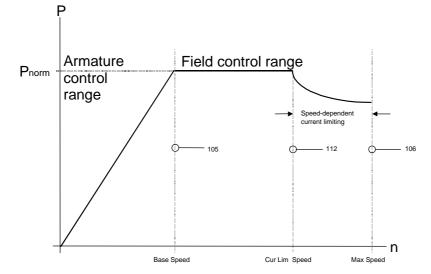
# Operation for field control mode



### Table 2

| Parameter | Parameter       | Significance  | Contents            | Entry |
|-----------|-----------------|---|---------------------|-------|
| number    | name            |   |                     | -     |
| 101       | Arm Cur Nom     | Nominal armature current                                      | lanom               |       |
| 102       | Arm Volt Nom    | Nominal armature voltage                                      | Uanom               |       |
| 103       | Field Cur Nom   | Nominal field current   | le <sub>nom</sub>   |       |
| 104       | Field Volt Nom  | Nominal field voltage   | Ue <sub>nom</sub>   |       |
| 105       | Base Speed      | Nominal speed   | n <sub>nom</sub>    |       |
| 106       | Max Speed       | Max. field weakening speed                                    | n <sub>max</sub>    |       |
|           |                 |   |                     |       |
| 201       | Macro Select    | Application macro selection                                   | Selection           |       |
| 203       | Stop Mode       | Stop mode selection   | Selection           |       |
| 204       | Eme Stop Mode   | Emergency stop mode selection                                 | Selection           |       |
|           |                 |   |                     |       |
| 502       | Speed Meas Mode | EMF or tacho or encoder<br>(Initial start-up = EMF)           | Selection           |       |
| 503       | Encoder Inc     | Number of increments per rev.<br>(if parameter 502 = Encoder) | Number of<br>pulses |       |
| 509       | Accel Ramp      | Acceleration ramp   | sec                 |       |
| 510       | Decel Ramp      | Deceleration ramp   | sec                 |       |
| 511       | Eme Stop Ramp   | Emergency stop ramp<br>(if parameter 204 = Ramp)              | sec                 |       |
|           |                 |   |                     |       |
| 601       | AI1 Scale 100%  | Reference signal voltage at 100% speed                        | 10 V                |       |
| 602       | AI1 Scale 0%    | Reference signal voltage at 0% speed                          | 5 V                 |       |
| 701       | Language        | Panel language selection                                      | Selection           |       |
|           |                 |   |                     |       |

continue with table 4



# Operation for field control mode with speed-dependent current limiting

### Table 3

| Parameter | Parameter       | Significance  | Contents            | Entry |
|-----------|-----------------|---|---------------------|-------|
| number    | name            |   |                     | •     |
| 101       | Arm Cur Nom     | Nominal armature current                                      | la <sub>nom</sub>   |       |
| 102       | Arm Volt Nom    | Nominal armature voltage                                      | Ua <sub>nom</sub>   |       |
| 103       | Field Cur Nom   | Nominal field current   | le <sub>nom</sub>   |       |
| 104       | Field Volt Nom  | Nominal field voltage   | Ue <sub>nom</sub>   |       |
| 105       | Base Speed      | Nominal speed   | n <sub>nom</sub>    |       |
| 106       | Max Speed       | Max. field weakening speed                                    | n <sub>max</sub>    |       |
| 112       | Cur Lim Sped    | Speed-dependent current limiting                              | n <sub>electr</sub> |       |
| 201       | Macro Select    | Application macro selection                                   | Selection           |       |
| 201       | Stop Mode       | Stop mode selection   | Selection           |       |
| 203       | Eme Stop Mode   | Emergency stop mode selection                                 | Selection           |       |
| 204       | Effie Stop Wode |   | Selection           |       |
| 502       | Speed Meas Mode | EMF or tacho or encoder<br>(Initial start-up = EMF)           | Selection           |       |
| 503       | Encoder Inc     | Number of increments per rev.<br>(if parameter 502 = Encoder) | Number of<br>pulses |       |
| 509       | Accel Ramp      | Acceleration ramp   | sec                 |       |
| 510       | Decel Ramp      | Deceleration ramp   | sec                 |       |
| 511       | Eme Stop Ramp   | Emergency stop ramp<br>(if parameter 204 = Ramp)              | sec                 |       |
|           |                 |   |                     |       |
| 601       | AI1 Scale 100%  | Reference signal voltage at 100% speed                        | 10 V                |       |
| 602       | AI1 Scale 0%    | Reference signal voltage at 0% speed                          | 5 V                 |       |
| 701       | Language        | Panel language selection                                      | Selection           |       |
|           |                 |   |                     |       |

continue with table 4

II K D-3

### Common parameters for the three operating modes

# Table 4

| Parameter | Parameter      | Significance                  | Contents           | Entry |
|-----------|----------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|-------|
| number    | name           | _                             |                    | -     |
| 304       | Arm Cur Max    | Maximum current limit         | % I_               |       |
| 305       | Overload Time  | Overload time                 | sec                |       |
| 306       | Recovery Time  | Recovery time                 | sec                |       |
| 307       | Torque Lim Pos | Positive torque limit         | % M <sub>nom</sub> |       |
| 308       | Torque Lim Neg | Negative torque limit         | % M <sub>nom</sub> |       |
| 317       | Stall Torque   | Stall torque                  | % M <sub>nom</sub> |       |
| 318       | Stall Time     | Stall time                    | sec                |       |
| 515       | Zero Speed Lev | Zero speed level              | rpm                |       |
| 516       | Speed Level 1  | Speed level 1 reached         | rpm                |       |
| 517       | Speed Level 2  | Speed level 2 reached         | rpm                |       |
| 605       | AO1 Assign     | Analog output signal 1        | Selection          |       |
| 606       | AO1 Mode       | Unipolar or bipolar signaling | Selection          |       |
| 607       | AO1 Scale      | 100% scaling = ? volts        | Selection          |       |
| 608       | AO2 Assign     | Analog output signal 2        | Selection          |       |
| 609       | AO2 Mode       | Unipolar or bipolar signaling | Selection          |       |
| 610       | AO2 Scale      | 100% scaling = ? volts        | Selection          |       |
| 611       | DO1 Assign     | Digital output signal 1       | Selection          |       |
| 612       | DO2 Assign     | Digital output signal 2       | Selection          |       |
| 613       | DO3 Assign     | Digital output signal 3       | Selection          |       |
| 614       | DO4 Assign     | Digital output signal 4       | Selection          |       |
| 615       | DO5 Assign     | Digital output signal 5       | Selection          |       |
| 616       | Panel Act 1    | Panel display top left        | Selection          |       |
| 617       | Panel Act 2    | Panel display top center      | Selection          |       |
| 618       | Panel Act 3    | Panel display top right       | Selection          |       |
| 619       | Panel Act 4    | Panel display bottom          | Selection          |       |
| 702       | Contr Service  | Self-setting procedures       | Selection          |       |

Since we aim to always meet the latest state-ofthe-art standards with our products, we are sure you will understand when we reserve the right to alter particulars of design, figures, sizes, weights, etc. for our equipment as specified in this brochure.



ABB Industrietechnik GmbH Antriebe und Automation Postfach 1180 D-68619 Lampertheim Telefon +49(0) 62 06 5 03-0 Telefax +49(0) 62 06 5 03-6 09